

**Confidential Information**



*SUPER AUDIO CD*

# **Super Audio CD System Description**

## **Part 2 Audio Specification**

**Version 2.0**

**March 2004**

**SONY**

**PHILIPS**

# **Super Audio CD System Description**

## **Part 2: Audio Specification**

Version 2.0

---

### **COPYRIGHT**

The System Description Super Audio CD is published by Royal Philips Electronics, (Eindhoven, The Netherlands) and has been prepared in close co-operation with Sony Corporation (Tokyo, Japan). All rights are reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part is prohibited without express and prior written permission of Royal Philips Electronics.

### **DISCLAIMER**

The information contained herein is believed to be accurate as of the date of publication, however, neither Royal Philips Electronics, nor Sony Corporation will be liable for any damages, including indirect or consequential, from use of the System Description Super Audio CD or reliance on the accuracy of this document.

### **LICENSING**

Application of the System Description Super Audio CD in both disc and equipment products requires a separate license from Philips.

### **CLASSIFICATION**

The information contained in this document is marked as confidential and shall be treated as confidential according to the provisions of the Agreement through which the document has been obtained.

### **NOTICE**

For any further explanation of the contents of this document, or in case of any perceived inconsistency or ambiguity of interpretation, or for any information regarding the Super Audio CD patent license program, please consult:

Philips Intellectual Property & Standards  
Business Support  
Building WAH  
Prof. Holstlaan 6  
5656 AA Eindhoven  
The Netherlands

Fax.: +31 40 27 32113  
Internet: [www.licensing.philips.com](http://www.licensing.philips.com)  
Email: [info.licensing@philips.com](mailto:info.licensing@philips.com)

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

Table of Contents	Page
1. General .....	1
1.1 Scope .....	1
1.2 Main Features .....	1
1.3 References and Conformance .....	2
1.4 Definitions .....	3
1.5 Definitions for DST .....	5
1.6 Conventions .....	6
1.6.1 Arithmetic and bit operations .....	6
1.6.2 Bit ordering .....	6
1.6.3 Bit sequence .....	6
1.6.4 Byte position .....	6
1.6.5 Decimal notation .....	6
1.6.6 DSD bit order .....	6
1.6.7 DSD Polarity .....	6
1.6.8 Hex notation .....	7
1.6.9 Range .....	7
1.6.10 Until .....	7
1.7 Basic Types .....	7
1.7.1 Simple types .....	7
1.7.1.1 BsMsbf .....	7
1.7.1.2 Char .....	7
1.7.1.3 SiMsbf .....	7
1.7.1.4 UiMsbf .....	7
1.7.1.5 Uintr .....	7
1.7.1.6 Uint8 .....	7
1.7.1.7 Uint16 .....	7
1.7.1.8 Uint32 .....	7
1.7.2 Complex types .....	8
1.7.2.1 Date .....	8
1.7.2.2 Genre_Code .....	8
1.7.2.2.1 Genre_Table .....	8
1.7.2.2.2 Genre_Index .....	8
1.7.2.3 Genre4 .....	9
1.7.2.4 Spec_Version .....	9
1.7.2.5 Special_Char .....	9
1.7.2.6 Special_String .....	9
1.7.2.7 String .....	10
1.7.2.8 Text_Channels .....	10
1.7.2.8.1 N_Text_Channels .....	10
1.7.2.8.2 Language_Code .....	10
1.7.2.8.3 Character_Set_Code .....	11
1.7.2.8.3.1 Control Characters .....	11
1.7.2.9 Time_Code .....	11
1.7.2.10 TOC_Text .....	12
1.7.2.10.1 Text_Type .....	12
1.7.2.10.2 Padding1 .....	12
1.7.2.10.3 Sp_String .....	12
1.7.2.10.4 Padding2 .....	12
1.7.2.11 Weblink_String .....	13
2. Disc Layout .....	14
2.1 Volume Space .....	14

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

2.2	Structure of the Volume Space .....	15
2.2.1	File System Area .....	15
2.2.2	DTCP Area.....	15
2.2.3	EKB1 Area, EKB2 Area .....	15
2.2.4	Master TOC Area.....	15
2.2.4.1	Master TOC .....	16
2.2.5	Rev TOC Area .....	16
2.2.6	Audio Areas .....	16
2.2.6.1	Area TOC .....	17
2.2.6.2	Track Area .....	18
2.2.6.2.1	Time Code .....	18
2.2.6.2.2	Track.....	18
2.2.6.2.2.1	Index .....	19
2.2.6.2.3	Pause.....	19
2.2.6.2.4	Display Time .....	19
2.2.6.2.5	Display Track.....	19
2.2.6.2.6	General Audio Encoding.....	19
2.2.7	Extension Area .....	19
2.2.8	Revocation Data Area.....	19
2.2.9	Extra Data Area .....	19
3.	TOC structure .....	20
3.1	Master TOC.....	20
3.1.1	Master_TOC_0 .....	20
3.1.1.1	M_TOC_0_Header .....	20
3.1.1.1.1	Master_TOC_Signature.....	20
3.1.1.1.2	Spec_Version .....	21
3.1.1.2	Album_Info .....	21
3.1.1.2.1	Album_Set_Size .....	21
3.1.1.2.2	Album_Sequence_Number .....	21
3.1.1.2.3	Album_Catalog_Number .....	21
3.1.1.2.4	Album_Genre.....	21
3.1.1.3	Disc_Info.....	22
3.1.1.3.1	2CH_TOC_1_Address.....	22
3.1.1.3.2	2CH_TOC_2_Address.....	22
3.1.1.3.3	MC_TOC_1_Address .....	22
3.1.1.3.4	MC_TOC_2_Address .....	22
3.1.1.3.5	Disc_Flags.....	22
3.1.1.3.5.1	Hybr bit.....	22
3.1.1.3.6	2CH_TOC_Length.....	23
3.1.1.3.7	MC_TOC_Length.....	23
3.1.1.3.8	Disc_Catalog_Number .....	23
3.1.1.3.9	Disc_Genre.....	23
3.1.1.3.10	Disc_Date .....	23
3.1.1.4	Text_Channels .....	23
3.1.1.5	Disc_WebLink_Info.....	23
3.1.1.5.1	Disc_WebLink.....	23
3.1.1.6	Disc_Info_2.....	24
3.1.1.6.1	2CH_TOC_3_Address.....	24
3.1.1.6.2	2CH_TOC_4_Address.....	24
3.1.1.6.3	MC_TOC_3_Address .....	24
3.1.1.6.4	MC_TOC_4_Address .....	24
3.1.1.6.5	2CH_TOC_B_Length .....	24
3.1.1.6.6	MC_TOC_B_Length.....	24
3.1.1.6.7	E_TOC_Address.....	25
3.1.1.6.8	E_TOC_Length.....	25
3.1.1.6.9	E_Data_Start_Address.....	25
3.1.1.6.10	E_Data_End_Address .....	25

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

3.1.1.6.11	EKB1_Area_Address.....	25
3.1.1.6.12	EKB2_Area_Address.....	25
3.1.1.6.13	Rev_Area_Start_Address.....	25
3.1.1.6.14	Rev_Area_End_Address.....	25
3.1.2	Master_Text.....	26
3.1.2.1	Master_Text_Signature.....	27
3.1.2.2	Album_Title_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.3	Album_Artist_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.4	Album_Publisher_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.5	Album_Copyright_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.6	Album_Title_Phonetic_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.7	Album_Artist_Phonetic_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.8	Album_Publisher_Phonetic_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.9	Album_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr.....	27
3.1.2.10	Disc_Title_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.11	Disc_Artist_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.12	Disc_Publisher_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.13	Disc_Copyright_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.14	Disc_Title_Phonetic_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.15	Disc_Artist_Phonetic_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.16	Disc_Publisher_Phonetic_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.17	Disc_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr.....	28
3.1.2.18	Album_Title.....	28
3.1.2.19	Album_Artist.....	28
3.1.2.20	Album_Publisher.....	29
3.1.2.21	Album_Copyright.....	29
3.1.2.22	Album_Title_Phonetic.....	29
3.1.2.23	Album_Artist_Phonetic.....	29
3.1.2.24	Album_Publisher_Phonetic.....	29
3.1.2.25	Album_Copyright_Phonetic.....	29
3.1.2.26	Disc_Title.....	29
3.1.2.27	Disc_Artist.....	29
3.1.2.28	Disc_Publisher.....	29
3.1.2.29	Disc_Copyright.....	29
3.1.2.30	Disc_Title_Phonetic.....	29
3.1.2.31	Disc_Artist_Phonetic.....	30
3.1.2.32	Disc_Publisher_Phonetic.....	30
3.1.2.33	Disc_Copyright_Phonetic.....	30
3.1.3	Manuf_Info.....	30
3.1.3.1	Manuf_Info_Signature.....	30
3.1.3.2	Information.....	30
3.2	Area TOC.....	31
3.2.1	Area_TOC_0.....	32
3.2.1.1	A_TOC_0_Header.....	32
3.2.1.1.1	Area_TOC_Signature.....	32
3.2.1.1.2	Spec_Version.....	32
3.2.1.1.3	Area_TOC_Length.....	32
3.2.1.2	Area_Data.....	33
3.2.1.2.1	Max_Byte_Rate.....	33
3.2.1.2.2	FS_Code.....	34
3.2.1.2.3	Area_Flags.....	34
3.2.1.2.3.1	Frame_Format.....	34
3.2.1.2.4	N_Channels.....	34
3.2.1.2.4.1	Channel Mapping for a 2-Channel Stereo Area (N_Channels=2).....	35
3.2.1.2.4.2	Channel Mapping for a Multi Channel Area (N_Channels=5).....	35
3.2.1.2.4.3	Channel Mapping for a Multi Channel Area (N_Channels=6).....	35
3.2.1.2.5	Area_Config.....	35

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

3.2.1.2.5.1	Extra_Setting.....	36
3.2.1.2.5.2	Loudspeaker_Config.....	36
3.2.1.2.6	Max_Available_Channels.....	36
3.2.1.2.7	Area_Mute_Flags.....	37
3.2.1.2.8	Area_Copy_Management.....	37
3.2.1.2.8.1	Track_Attribute.....	37
3.2.1.2.9	Total_Area_Play_Time.....	37
3.2.1.2.10	Track_Offset.....	38
3.2.1.2.11	N_Tracks.....	38
3.2.1.2.12	First_Bonus_Track_Number.....	38
3.2.1.2.13	Track_Area_Start_Address.....	38
3.2.1.2.14	Track_Area_End_Address.....	38
3.2.1.2.15	Text_Channels.....	39
3.2.1.3	List_Pointers.....	39
3.2.1.3.1	Track_Text_Ptr.....	39
3.2.1.3.2	Index_List_Ptr.....	39
3.2.1.3.3	Access_List_Ptr.....	39
3.2.1.3.4	Track_WebLink_List_Ptr.....	39
3.2.1.3.5	Track_List_3_Ptr.....	40
3.2.1.3.6	Set_Of_PlayLists_Ptr.....	40
3.2.1.4	Area_Text.....	40
3.2.1.4.1	Area_Description_Ptr.....	40
3.2.1.4.2	Area_Copyright_Ptr.....	40
3.2.1.4.3	Area_Description_Phonetic_Ptr.....	40
3.2.1.4.4	Area_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr.....	41
3.2.1.4.5	Area_Description.....	41
3.2.1.4.6	Area_Copyright.....	41
3.2.1.4.7	Area_Description_Phonetic.....	41
3.2.1.4.8	Area_Copyright_Phonetic.....	41
3.2.2	Track_List_1.....	41
3.2.2.1	Track_List_1_Signature.....	41
3.2.2.2	Track_Start_Address.....	42
3.2.2.3	Track_Length.....	42
3.2.3	Track_List_2.....	42
3.2.3.1	Track_List_2_Signature.....	42
3.2.3.2	Track_Start_Time_Code.....	42
3.2.3.3	Track_Mode.....	43
3.2.3.3.1	Extra_Use.....	43
3.2.3.4	Track_Time_Length.....	43
3.2.3.5	Track_Flags.....	43
3.2.3.5.1	Index List Present (ILP).....	43
3.2.3.5.2	TMF1, TMF2, TMF3, TMF4.....	44
3.2.4	ISRC_and_Genre_List.....	45
3.2.4.1	ISRC_and_Genre_Signature.....	45
3.2.4.2	ISRC.....	45
3.2.4.2.1	Country_Code.....	46
3.2.4.2.2	Owner_Code.....	46
3.2.4.2.3	Recording_Year.....	46
3.2.4.2.4	Designation_Code.....	46
3.2.4.3	Genre.....	46
3.2.5	Access_List.....	46
3.2.5.1	Access_List_Signature.....	46
3.2.5.2	N_Entries.....	46
3.2.5.3	Main_Step_Size.....	47
3.2.5.4	Main_Acc_List.....	47
3.2.5.4.1	Access_Flags.....	47
3.2.5.4.1.1	Detailed.....	47
3.2.5.4.1.2	Detailed_List_Ptr.....	47

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

3.2.5.4.1.3	Access_Margin .....	48
3.2.5.4.2	Entry.....	48
3.2.5.5	Detailed_Access.....	48
3.2.5.5.1	Detailed_List.....	49
3.2.5.5.1.1	Sub_Entry .....	49
3.2.6	Track_Text.....	49
3.2.6.1	Track_Text_Signature .....	49
3.2.6.2	Track_Text_Item_Ptr.....	50
3.2.6.3	N_Items .....	50
3.2.6.4	Text_Item.....	50
3.2.7	Index_List.....	50
3.2.7.1	Index_List_Signature.....	50
3.2.7.2	Index_Ptr .....	50
3.2.7.3	N_Stored_Indexes.....	51
3.2.7.4	Index_Start_TC .....	51
3.2.8	Track_WebLink_List.....	51
3.2.8.1	Track_WebLink_List_Signature .....	51
3.2.8.2	Track_WL_Start_Ptr.....	51
3.2.8.3	Track_WebLink.....	51
3.2.9	Track_List_3 .....	52
3.2.9.1	Track_List_3_Signature .....	52
3.2.9.2	SD_Info.....	52
3.2.9.2.1	Area_Flags_2 .....	52
3.2.9.2.1.1	Pictures Present (Pic_Pr).....	53
3.2.9.2.1.2	Sub_Pictures Present (Sub_Pr).....	53
3.2.9.2.1.3	Text Present (Txt_Pr).....	53
3.2.9.2.2	PreLoad_Entry.....	53
3.2.9.2.2.1	PreLoad_Start_Address.....	53
3.2.9.2.2.2	PreLoad_Start_TC.....	53
3.2.9.2.3	Track_Pic_Presence .....	53
3.2.9.2.3.1	Slide Show Picture Present (Pic_SS).....	54
3.2.9.2.3.2	Background Picture A Present (Pic_BA) .....	54
3.2.9.2.3.3	Background Picture B Present (Pic_BB) .....	54
3.2.9.2.3.4	Background Picture C Present (Pic_BC).....	54
3.2.9.2.3.5	Resol.....	54
3.2.9.2.4	Track_Txt_Sub_Presence.....	54
3.2.9.2.4.1	Streaming_Info SubPicture Present (Sub_St).....	54
3.2.9.2.4.2	Title SubPicture Present (Sub_Ti) .....	54
3.2.9.2.4.3	Lyrics SubPicture Present (Sub_Ly).....	54
3.2.9.2.4.4	Liner_Notes SubPicture Present (Sub_Li).....	55
3.2.9.2.4.5	Streaming_Info Text Present (Txt_St) .....	55
3.2.9.2.4.6	Title Text Present (Txt_Ti) .....	55
3.2.9.2.4.7	Lyrics Text Present (Txt_Ly).....	55
3.2.9.2.4.8	Liner_Notes Text Present (Txt_Li).....	55
3.2.9.3	Audio_CCI .....	55
3.2.9.4	SD_Slide_List.....	55
3.2.9.4.1	N_SD_Slides .....	55
3.2.9.4.2	SD_Slide_Address .....	56
3.2.10	Set_Of_PlayLists .....	56
3.2.10.1	Set_Of_PlayLists_Signature .....	56
3.2.10.2	N_PlayLists.....	56
3.2.10.3	PlayList_Name_Ptr.....	57
3.2.10.4	PlayList_Name .....	57
3.2.10.5	PlayList.....	57
3.2.10.5.1	PL_N_Entries.....	57
3.2.10.5.2	PL_Track_Value, PL_Index_Value .....	57
3.3	DTCP .....	58

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

3.3.1	DTCP_SRM_List .....	58
3.3.1.1	DTCP_SRM0_List_Signature.....	58
3.3.1.2	SRM0.....	58
3.4	EKB_Data .....	58
3.4.1	EKB_Signature .....	58
3.4.2	EKB_Length.....	58
3.4.3	EKB.....	58
3.5	Revocation_TOC .....	59
3.5.1.1	Rev_TOC_Signature .....	59
3.5.1.2	N_Revocation_Systems .....	59
3.5.1.3	Revocation_ID .....	59
3.5.1.4	Rev_Data_Length.....	60
3.5.1.5	Rev_Data_Start_Address.....	60
3.5.1.6	Rev_Attribute.....	60
4.	File System .....	61
4.1	UDF Requirements .....	61
4.2	Root Directory .....	62
4.2.1	Files MASTER1.TOC, MASTER2.TOC and MASTER3.TOC .....	62
4.2.2	File SRM0.LST .....	62
4.2.3	Files EKB1.DAT and EKB2.DAT .....	62
4.2.4	File REVTOC.TOC .....	62
4.2.5	File EXTENS.TOC .....	62
4.2.6	File EXTENS.DAT .....	62
4.2.7	File REVOC.DAT .....	62
4.3	Directory 2C_AUDIO.....	62
4.3.1	Files 2C_AREA1.TOC and 2C_AREA2.TOC .....	63
4.3.2	Files 2C_AREA3.TOC and 2C_AREA4.TOC .....	63
4.3.3	File 2C_TAREA.2CH .....	63
4.3.4	Files TRACKnnn.2CH.....	63
4.4	Directory MC_AUDIO.....	63
4.4.1	Files MC_AREA1.TOC and MC_AREA2.TOC .....	63
4.4.2	Files MC_AREA3.TOC and MC_AREA4.TOC .....	64
4.4.3	File MC_TAREA.MCH .....	64
4.4.4	Files TRACKnnn.MCH.....	64
4.5	Permissions.....	64
5.	Audio Data Format .....	65
5.1	Audio Sector Format .....	65
5.1.1	Audio_Header .....	65
5.1.2	Packet.....	65
5.2	Multiplexed Frame Format.....	66
5.3	Byte Stream Syntax .....	67
5.3.1	Audio_Sector .....	67
5.3.1.1	Audio_Header.....	68
5.3.1.1.1	N_Packets .....	68
5.3.1.1.2	N_Frame_Starts .....	68
5.3.1.1.3	DST_Coded .....	68
5.3.1.1.4	Packet_Info.....	68
5.3.1.1.4.1	Frame_Start .....	68
5.3.1.1.4.2	Data_Type.....	69
5.3.1.1.4.3	Packet_Length .....	69
5.3.1.1.5	Frame_Info .....	69



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

5.3.1.1.5.1	Time_Code.....	69
5.3.1.1.5.2	Ch_Bit_n .....	69
5.3.1.1.5.3	N_Sectors .....	70
5.3.1.2	Packet.....	70
5.3.1.3	Stuffing.....	70
5.4	2-Channel Stereo Area .....	71
5.4.1	Plain DSD .....	71
5.4.1.1	3 Frames in 14 Sectors .....	71
5.4.1.2	3 Frames in 16 Sectors .....	73
5.4.2	DST Coded DSD .....	75
5.5	Multi Channel Area .....	75
5.6	Audio Streams.....	76
5.6.1	DSD Sampled Bit Stream Data .....	76
5.6.2	Structure of the Audio Stream .....	76
5.6.3	Audio_Frame .....	76
5.6.3.1	DSD .....	77
5.6.3.1.1	DSD_Byte .....	78
5.6.3.2	DST.....	79
5.6.3.2.1	Processing_Mode.....	79
5.6.3.2.2	DST_X_Bit.....	79
5.6.3.2.2.1	P(DST_X_Bit) (Multiplexing/Demultiplexing) .....	79
5.6.3.2.3	DSD .....	80
5.6.3.2.4	Segmentation.....	80
5.6.3.2.4.1	Same_Segmentation .....	81
5.6.3.2.4.2	Segment_Alloc.....	81
5.6.3.2.4.2.1	Same_Segm_For_All_Channels.....	81
5.6.3.2.4.2.2	Channel_Segmentation.....	82
5.6.3.2.4.2.2.1	End_Of_Channel_Segm.....	82
5.6.3.2.4.2.2.2	Resolution.....	82
5.6.3.2.4.2.2.3	Scaled_Length.....	83
5.6.3.2.5	Mapping.....	84
5.6.3.2.5.1	Same_Mapping.....	85
5.6.3.2.5.2	Maps .....	85
5.6.3.2.5.2.1	Same_Maps_For_All_Channels .....	85
5.6.3.2.5.2.2	Channel_Mapping .....	86
5.6.3.2.5.2.2.1	Element.....	86
5.6.3.2.6	Half_Probability.....	86
5.6.3.2.6.1	Half_Prob .....	87
5.6.3.2.7	Filter_Coef_Sets.....	87
5.6.3.2.7.1	DST_Y_Bit .....	89
5.6.3.2.7.2	Coded_Pred_Order.....	89
5.6.3.2.7.3	Coded_Filter_Coef_Set .....	90
5.6.3.2.7.4	CC_Method .....	90
5.6.3.2.7.5	CCM .....	90
5.6.3.2.7.6	RL_Bit .....	90
5.6.3.2.7.7	LSBs.....	90
5.6.3.2.7.8	Sign .....	90
5.6.3.2.8	Probability_Tables .....	90
5.6.3.2.8.1	Coded_Ptable_Len .....	92
5.6.3.2.8.2	Coded_Ptable .....	92
5.6.3.2.8.3	Coded_P_one .....	92
5.6.3.2.8.4	PC_Method .....	93
5.6.3.2.8.5	PCM .....	93
5.6.3.2.8.6	RL_Bit .....	93
5.6.3.2.8.7	LSBs.....	93
5.6.3.2.8.8	Sign .....	93

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

5.6.3.2.9	Arithmetic_Coded_Data .....	93
5.6.3.2.9.1	A_Data .....	93
5.7	Supplementary Data Stream .....	94
5.7.1	Supplementary_Data_Frame .....	94
5.7.1.1	SD_Unit .....	95
5.7.1.1.1	SD_Type .....	95
5.7.1.1.1.1	Not Allowed .....	95
5.7.1.1.1.2	JPEG_Picture .....	96
5.7.1.1.1.3	Sub_Picture .....	96
5.7.1.1.1.4	Text .....	96
5.7.1.1.2	Information Unit: IU_Start, IU_End .....	97
5.7.1.1.3	SD_Length .....	97
5.7.1.1.4	Start_PTC, End_PTC, IU_Start_TC, IU_End_TC .....	98
5.7.1.1.4.1	PreLoad Area .....	98
5.7.1.1.4.2	Load Area .....	99
5.7.1.1.4.2.1	Track_SD_Data_Area .....	99
5.7.1.1.4.3	Index_Load_Area .....	99
5.7.1.1.5	Immediate_Start .....	99
5.7.1.1.6	Immediate_End .....	100
5.7.1.1.7	Pic_Sub_Type .....	100
5.7.1.1.7.1	P_Sub_Type .....	100
5.7.1.1.7.2	Slide_Show_Picture .....	100
5.7.1.1.7.3	Background_Picture_A .. C .....	101
5.7.1.1.8	Text_Channel_Mapping .....	101
5.7.1.1.9	T_Sub_Type .....	101
5.7.1.1.9.1	Streaming_Info .....	102
5.7.1.1.9.2	Title .....	102
5.7.1.1.9.3	Lyrics .....	102
5.7.1.1.9.4	Liner_Notes .....	103
5.7.1.1.10	Page_Nr .....	103
5.7.1.1.11	P_Ref .....	103
5.7.1.1.12	Nm_Pages .....	103
5.7.1.1.13	SD_Data .....	103
5.7.1.1.14	SD_Unit_Stuffing .....	103
5.7.1.2	SD_Stuffing .....	103
5.7.2	Supplementary Data player guidelines .....	104
5.7.2.1	Player controls .....	104
5.7.2.2	Display of Background pictures .....	104
6.	Extension Area .....	105
6.1	Extension_TOC .....	105
6.1.1	Extension_TOC_0 .....	106
6.1.1.1	E_TOC_Signature .....	106
6.1.1.2	Ext_TOC_Length .....	106
6.1.1.3	Picture_Flags .....	106
6.1.1.3.1	4x3 Bit .....	106
6.1.1.3.2	16x9 Bit .....	107
6.1.1.4	Text_Channels .....	107
6.1.1.5	Disc_N_ENodes .....	107
6.1.1.6	Disc_ENode_Info .....	107
6.1.1.6.1	ENode_Nr .....	107
6.1.1.6.2	Disc_Jacket_ENode_Nr .....	107
6.1.1.6.3	Disc_Liner_Notes_ENode_Nr .....	108
6.1.1.6.4	Discography_ENode_Nr .....	108
6.1.1.6.5	Copyright_Info_ENode_Nr .....	108
6.1.1.7	2CH_N_ENodes .....	108
6.1.1.8	2CH_N_Tracks .....	108

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

6.1.1.9	MCH_N_ENodes .....	108
6.1.1.10	MCH_N_Tracks .....	108
6.1.1.11	Ext_Data_Start_Address .....	108
6.1.1.12	Ext_Data_End_Address .....	108
6.1.1.13	E_List_Pointers .....	109
6.1.1.13.1	2CH_Track_ENodes_Info_Ptr .....	109
6.1.1.13.2	MCH_Track_ENodes_Info_Ptr .....	109
6.1.1.13.3	Disc_ENode_List_Ptr .....	109
6.1.1.13.4	2CH_ENode_List_Ptr .....	109
6.1.1.13.5	MCH_ENode_List_Ptr .....	109
6.1.2	2CH_Track_ENodes_Info .....	109
6.1.3	MCH_Track_Enodes_Info .....	109
6.1.4	Track_ENodes_Info .....	110
6.1.4.1	Track_Title_ENode_Nr .....	110
6.1.4.2	Track_Liner_Notes_ENode_Nr .....	110
6.1.4.3	Track_Lyrics_ENode_Nr .....	110
6.1.4.4	Track_Slide_Show_ENode_Nr .....	111
6.1.5	Disc_ENode_List .....	111
6.1.6	2CH_ENode_List .....	111
6.1.7	MCH_ENode_List .....	111
6.1.8	ENode_List .....	111
6.1.8.1	ENode .....	112
6.1.8.1.1	ENode_Group .....	112
6.1.8.1.2	Page_Number .....	112
6.1.8.1.3	Num_Pages .....	112
6.1.8.1.4	TC .....	112
6.1.8.1.5	Text_Ptr .....	112
6.1.8.1.6	Sub_Pic_Ofs .....	112
6.1.8.1.7	Thumb_Pic_Ofs .....	113
6.1.8.1.8	Main_Pic_Ofs .....	113
6.1.8.1.9	Text_Byte_Len .....	113
6.1.8.1.10	Sub_Pic_Len .....	113
6.1.8.1.11	Thumb_Pic_Len .....	113
6.1.8.1.12	Main_Pic_Len .....	113
6.2	Extension_Data .....	113
6.2.1	Text_Data .....	114
6.2.1.1	Text_Information .....	114
6.2.2	Sub_Pic_Data .....	114
6.2.2.1	Sub_Pic_Information .....	114
6.2.3	Thumbnail_Data .....	114
6.2.3.1	Thumbnail_Picture .....	115
6.2.3.2	TD_Stuffing .....	115
6.2.4	Main_Picture_Data .....	115
6.2.4.1	Main_Picture .....	115
6.2.4.2	MP_Stuffing .....	115
7.	JPEG Definitions and Restrictions .....	116
7.1	Requirements for JPEG images .....	116
7.2	Recommendations for JPEG images .....	116
7.3	Notes for Super Audio CD players .....	116
8.	Sub Picture Definitions .....	117
8.1	Sub_Picture_Header .....	117
8.1.1	Sub_Picture_Signature .....	117
8.1.2	Sub_Picture_Flags .....	117
8.1.2.1	Sub_Pic_Type .....	117

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

8.2	Color_LUT .....	118
8.2.1	YCbCrT .....	118
8.2.1.1	P_Y .....	118
8.2.1.2	P_Cb .....	118
8.2.1.3	P_Cr .....	118
8.2.1.4	Transparency .....	118
8.3	Encoded_Sub_Picture .....	119
8.3.1	Pixel_Run .....	120
8.3.1.1	Code_Bit .....	121
8.3.1.2	Trans_Table .....	122
8.3.1.2.1	Raw_Pix_Data .....	122
8.3.1.2.2	Trans_Table_Bit1, Trans_Table_Bit2 .....	122
8.3.1.3	Code_Bit2 .....	122
8.3.1.4	Repeat2 .....	123
8.3.1.5	RLen_Bit .....	123
8.3.1.6	Repeat1 .....	123
8.3.2	Stuffing_Bits .....	123
Annex A:	Play Back Requirements (Normative) .....	124
A.1	Player Reference Model .....	124
A.2	Supplementary Data Buffer Model .....	125
Annex B:	General Genre Table (Normative) .....	126
Annex C:	DST Decoder Reference Model (Normative) .....	127
C.1	DST Decoder Block Diagrams .....	127
C.2	DST Decoding Processes .....	128
C.2.1	Introduction .....	128
C.2.2	Arithmetic Decoder .....	128
C.2.3	Source Model .....	133
C.2.3.1	Initialization .....	134
C.2.4	Multiplexing/Demultiplexing .....	135
Annex D:	Audio Signal Requirements (Normative) .....	136
D.1	Super Audio CD Audio Level measuring condition .....	136
D.2	Super Audio CD Zero dB Audio Reference Level .....	136
D.3	Maximum Super Audio CD Audio Peak Level .....	136
D.3.1	Maximum DSD Modulation Level .....	136
D.3.2	Maximum Long term average modulation Level (L-Level) .....	136
D.4	High Frequency DSD Signal + Noise Level .....	136
Annex E:	Audio Signal Recommendations (Informative) .....	137
E.1	Analog Output Level .....	137
E.2	Analog Post-filter .....	137
E.3	DSD DC Offset .....	137
E.4	DSD polarity .....	137
Annex F:	Restrictions to DST coded Audio_Frames (Normative) .....	138
F.1	Limited number of erroneously predicted samples .....	138
F.2	Probability table design requirement .....	139

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

Table of Figures	Page
Figure 1-1 : Bit ordering in a Byte.....	6
Figure 1-2 : Byte position in a series of n Sectors.....	6
Figure 1-3 : Syntax of Date .....	8
Figure 1-4 : Syntax of Genre_Code .....	8
Figure 1-5 : Definition of Genre_Table .....	8
Figure 1-6 : Syntax of Genre4 .....	9
Figure 1-7 : Syntax of Spec_Version.....	9
Figure 1-8 : Syntax of Special_String.....	9
Figure 1-9 : Syntax of String.....	10
Figure 1-10 : Syntax of Text_Channels.....	10
Figure 1-11 : Definition of Character Set.....	11
Figure 1-12 : Syntax of Time_Code .....	11
Figure 1-13 : Syntax of TOC_Text .....	12
Figure 1-14 : Definition of Text_Type .....	12
Figure 1-15 : Syntax of Weblink_String.....	13
Figure 2-1 : Volume Space of a disc with one High Density Layer .....	14
Figure 2-2 : Volume Space of a Dual Layer disc.....	14
Figure 2-3 : Structure of the Volume Space.....	15
Figure 2-4 : Structure of the Master TOC Area .....	15
Figure 2-5 : Structure of the Master TOC.....	16
Figure 2-6 : Structure of an Audio Area .....	16
Figure 2-7 : Structure of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 .....	17
Figure 2-8 : Layout of the Track Area.....	18
Figure 2-9 : Layout of a Track .....	18
Figure 2-10 : Structure of the Extension Area.....	19
Figure 3-1 : Syntax of the Master TOC .....	20
Figure 3-2 : Syntax of Master_TOC_0 .....	20
Figure 3-3 : Syntax of Master_TOC_0_Header .....	20
Figure 3-4 : Syntax of Album_Info.....	21
Figure 3-5 : Syntax of Disc_Info .....	22
Figure 3-6 : Format of Disc_Flags.....	22
Figure 3-7 : Syntax of Disc_WebLink_Info.....	23
Figure 3-8 : Syntax of Disc_Info_2 .....	24
Figure 3-9 : Syntax of Master_Text.....	26
Figure 3-10 : Syntax of Manuf_Info .....	30
Figure 3-11 : Syntax of Area_TOC.....	31
Figure 3-12 : Syntax of Area_TOC_0.....	32
Figure 3-13 : Syntax of A_TOC_0_Header .....	32
Figure 3-14 : Syntax of Area_Data.....	33
Figure 3-15 : Definition of FS_Code.....	34
Figure 3-16 : Format of Area_Flags .....	34
Figure 3-17 : Definition of Frame_Format.....	34
Figure 3-18 : Definition of Channel Mapping for N_Channels = 2 .....	35
Figure 3-19 : Definition of Channel Mapping for N_Channels = 5 .....	35
Figure 3-20 : Definition of Channel Mapping for N_Channels = 6 .....	35
Figure 3-21 : Definition of Area_Config .....	35
Figure 3-22 : Definition of Extra_Setting .....	36
Figure 3-23 : Definition of Loudspeaker_Config.....	36
Figure 3-24 : Format of Area_Mute_Flags .....	37
Figure 3-25 : Format of Area_Copy_Management .....	37
Figure 3-26 : Example of the use of Track_Offset .....	38
Figure 3-27 : Syntax of List_Pointers .....	39
Figure 3-28 : Syntax of Area_Text .....	40
Figure 3-29 : Syntax of Track_List_1 .....	41
Figure 3-30 : Syntax of Track_List_2 .....	42

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

Figure 3-31 : Format of Track_Mode .....	43
Figure 3-32 : Definition of Extra_Use .....	43
Figure 3-33 : Format of Track_Flags.....	43
Figure 3-34 : Relation between N_Channels and TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4 .....	44
Figure 3-35 : Allowed combinations of TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4 .....	45
Figure 3-36 : Syntax of ISRC_and_Genre_List.....	45
Figure 3-37 : Syntax of ISRC .....	45
Figure 3-38 : Syntax of Access_List.....	46
Figure 3-39 : Syntax of Main_Acc_List.....	47
Figure 3-40 : Syntax of Access_Flags .....	47
Figure 3-41 : Syntax of Detailed_Access .....	48
Figure 3-42 : Syntax of Detailed_List .....	49
Figure 3-43 : Syntax of Track_Text.....	49
Figure 3-44 : Syntax of Index_List.....	50
Figure 3-45 : Syntax of Track_WebLink_List .....	51
Figure 3-46 : Syntax of Track_List_3 .....	52
Figure 3-47 : Syntax of SD_Info .....	52
Figure 3-48 : Format of Area_Flags_2 .....	52
Figure 3-49 : Syntax of PreLoad_Entry .....	53
Figure 3-50 : Format of Track_Pic_Presence .....	53
Figure 3-51 : Format of Track_Txt_Sub_Presence.....	54
Figure 3-52 : SD_Slide_List .....	55
Figure 3-53 : Syntax of Set_Of_PlayLists .....	56
Figure 3-54 : Syntax of PlayList .....	57
Figure 3-55 : Syntax of DTCP_SRM_List .....	58
Figure 3-56 : Syntax of EKB_Data .....	58
Figure 3-57 : Syntax of Revocation_TOC .....	59
Figure 4-1 : Example of the Super Audio CD directory structure.....	61
Figure 5-1 : Example of a Byte Stream .....	65
Figure 5-2 : Structure of an Audio Sector.....	65
Figure 5-3 : Example of a Multiplexed Frame .....	66
Figure 5-4 : Example of the structure of Audio Sectors .....	66
Figure 5-5 : Example of a Byte Stream .....	67
Figure 5-6 : Syntax of Byte Stream .....	67
Figure 5-7 : Syntax of Audio_Sector .....	67
Figure 5-8 : Syntax of Audio_Header.....	68
Figure 5-9 : Syntax of Packet_Info.....	68
Figure 5-10 : Definition of Data_Type .....	69
Figure 5-11 : Syntax of Frame_Info.....	69
Figure 5-12 : Definition of Ch_Bit_n .....	69
Figure 5-13 : Examples of the value of N_Sectors.....	70
Figure 5-14 : Packet length for the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format .....	71
Figure 5-15 : Packet sequence for the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format .....	72
Figure 5-16 : Layout of the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format .....	73
Figure 5-17 : Packet length for the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format .....	73
Figure 5-18 : Packet sequence for the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format .....	74
Figure 5-19 : Layout of the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format .....	75
Figure 5-20 : Syntax of Audio_Frame .....	76
Figure 5-21 : Syntax of DSD .....	77
Figure 5-22 : Example of a 5 channel DSD Frame .....	78
Figure 5-23 : Syntax of DST .....	79
Figure 5-24 : Example of Segmentation.....	80
Figure 5-25 : Syntax of Segmentation.....	80
Figure 5-26 : Syntax of Segments.....	81
Figure 5-27 : Syntax of Channel_Segmentation .....	82
Figure 5-28 : Bits used to encode Scaled_Length.....	83
Figure 5-29 : Example of filter allocation.....	84
Figure 5-30 : Syntax of Mapping .....	84

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

Figure 5-31 : Syntax of Maps .....	85
Figure 5-32 : Syntax of Channel_Mapping.....	86
Figure 5-33 : Bits used to encode Element.....	86
Figure 5-34 : Syntax of Half_Probability.....	86
Figure 5-35 : Definition of Half_Prob.....	87
Figure 5-36 : Syntax of Filter_Coef_Sets .....	88
Figure 5-37 : Relation between CC_Method and CCPO .....	89
Figure 5-38 : Relation between CC_Method and CCPC[] .....	89
Figure 5-39 : Syntax of Probability_Tables .....	91
Figure 5-40 : Relation between PC_Method and PCPO.....	92
Figure 5-41 : Relation between PC_Method and PCPC[] .....	92
Figure 5-42 : Syntax of Arithmetic_Coded_Data.....	93
Figure 5-43 : Syntax of Supplementary Data Frame.....	94
Figure 5-44 : Syntax of SD_Unit.....	95
Figure 5-45 : Definition of SD_Type.....	95
Figure 5-46 : Definition of IU_Start and IU_End.....	97
Figure 5-47 : Example of the de-interleaving of Information Units.....	97
Figure 5-48 : Relation between IU_Start_TC, IU_End_TC, Start_PTC and End_PTC .....	98
Figure 5-49 : Layout of PreLoad Area and Load Area .....	99
Figure 5-50 : Format of Pic_Sub_Type .....	100
Figure 5-51 : Definition of P_Sub_Type .....	100
Figure 5-52 : Format of Text_Channel_Mapping .....	101
Figure 5-53 : Definition of T_Sub_Type .....	101
Figure 6-1 : Syntax of Extension_TOC.....	105
Figure 6-2 : Syntax of Extension_TOC_0 .....	106
Figure 6-3 : Format of Picture_Flags.....	106
Figure 6-4 : Syntax of Disc_ENode_Info.....	107
Figure 6-5 : Syntax of E_List_Pointers.....	109
Figure 6-6 : Syntax of Track_ENodes_Info .....	110
Figure 6-7 : Syntax of ENode_List .....	111
Figure 6-8 : Syntax of ENode .....	112
Figure 6-9 : Syntax of Extension_Data.....	113
Figure 6-10 : Syntax of Text_Data .....	114
Figure 6-11 : Syntax of Sub_Pic_Data .....	114
Figure 6-12 : Syntax of Thumbnail_Data .....	114
Figure 6-13 : Syntax of Main_Picture_Data .....	115
Figure 8-1 : Syntax of Sub_Picture .....	117
Figure 8-2 : Syntax of Sub_Picture_Header .....	117
Figure 8-3 : Format of Sub_Picture_Flags.....	117
Figure 8-4 : Definition of Sub_Pic_Type .....	117
Figure 8-5 : Syntax of Color_LUT_00.....	118
Figure 8-6 : Syntax of YCbCrT .....	118
Figure 8-7 : Syntax of Encoded_Sub_Picture_A.....	119
Figure 8-8 : Syntax of Pixel_Run.....	121
Figure 8-9 : Syntax of Trans_Table.....	122
Figure A-1 : Global Block Diagram of the Super Audio CD Reference Player .....	124
Figure A-2 : Supplementary Data Buffer Model .....	125
Figure B-1 : Definition of Genre_Index.....	126
Figure C-1 : Block diagram of the DST decoder for a mono DSD signal.....	127
Figure C-2 : Global diagram of the single channel DST decoder .....	127
Figure C-3 : Global diagram of the C-channel DST decoder .....	128
Figure C-4 : Variables used in Figures C-5, C-6, C-7 and C-8 .....	129
Figure C-5 : Flowchart of the arithmetic decoder.....	130
Figure C-6 : Initialization.....	131
Figure C-7 : Decode a bit of E, update A and C.....	132
Figure C-8 : Renormalize A and C, input next bit(s) D.....	132
Figure C-9 : Source model .....	133
Figure D-1 : Meter for L-Level .....	136

This page is intentionally left blank.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

## 1. General

### 1.1 Scope

This document describes the Audio part of the Super Audio CD system. The Super Audio CD System Description consists of three parts:

- Part 1, Physical Specification
- Part 2, Audio Specification
- Part 3, Copy Protection Specification

### 1.2 Main Features

- Hybrid disc concept which makes Super Audio CD discs possible that can be played both on existing CD Audio players and new Super Audio CD players.
- Independent super high quality 2-channel stereo and multichannel audio on one disc. It is recommended that a multichannel disc contains the same content for 2-channel stereo and for multichannel audio. Every Super Audio CD disc must have a 2-Channel Stereo Area with Audio Tracks. It is recommended that a hybrid disc contains the same content for the CD Layer and for 2-channel stereo on the high density layer.
- Playing time of 70 to 80 minutes for both 2-channel stereo and multichannel audio on one disc.
- Multichannel audio with maximum six, full quality, audio channels.
- Multichannel loudspeaker arrangements according to ITU recommendations.
- The main access mechanism for a Super Audio CD is the Table Of Contents structure. Optionally a file system can be used for access.
- The Table Of Contents contains information on four levels, album information, disc information, area information and track information.
- In the Table Of Contents eight Text Channels are available. Both normal and phonetic text can be used.
- Support for text and pictures in supplementary data, multiplexed with the audio signal.
- Separate Extra Data area, for optional data related to the audio. The information in this Extra Data area can be retrieved via a file system.
- Advanced copy protection system, specified in Super Audio CD System Description Part 3.
- Bonus Tracks.
- JPEG pictures, sub-pictures and coded text for slide shows and for browsable information.
- Super Audio CD players developed according to this version of the specification do not need to read the specification version number (see chapter 3.1.1.1.2) to be able to play back discs according to specification version numbers 1.0, 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3.
- General audio parameters:

A/D conversion process	1-bit Delta-Sigma (DSD) Optional DST Coding
Sampling Frequency	64 times 44.1 kHz

### 1.3 References and Conformance

Super Audio CD conforms to all mandatory requirements specified in this document. All parts in this document are mandatory unless they are specially defined as recommended or optional or informative.

Super Audio CD also conforms to the applicable parts of the System Descriptions or international standards that are listed below:

BIG5	Big5 character set.
CCIR 601	ITU-R Recommendation BT.601-5, Studio Encoding Parameters of Digital television for Standard 4:3 and Wide-Screen 16:9 Aspect Ratios (1982 - 1995), [formerly CCIR Rec.601] (Geneva: ITU)
CCIR 709	ITU-R Recommendation BT.709, Basic Parameter Values for the HDTV standard for the Studio and for International Programme Exchange (1990), [formerly CCIR Rec.709] (Geneva: ITU, 1990)
CD-DA	Compact Disc Digital Audio, specified in the System Description Compact Disc Digital Audio ("Red Book"), Royal Philips Electronics and Sony Corporation.
EXIF	JEIDA-49-1997, Digital Still Camera Image File Format Standard (Exchangeable image file format for Digital Still Camera: EXIF) Version 2.0, JEIDA, Nov. 1997.
IEC 908 / IEC 60908	Compact disc digital audio system.
IEEE 1394	Standard for a High Performance Serial Bus. Ref. No. IEEE 1394-1995. Also see 1394 Trade Association, <a href="http://www.1394ta.org">www.1394ta.org</a> .
ISO 639	Code for the representation of names of languages. Ref. No. ISO 639.
ISO/IEC 646	Information technology - ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange. Ref. No. ISO/IEC 646.
ISO/IEC 2022	Information technology - Character code structure and extension techniques. Ref. No. ISO/IEC 2022.
ISO 3901	Documentation - International Standard Recording Code (ISRC). Ref. No. ISO 3901.
ISO/IEC 8859-1	Information technology - 8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets -- Part 1: Latin alphabet No. 1. Ref. No. ISO/IEC 8859-1.
ISO 9660	Information processing - volume and file structure of CD-ROM for information interchange. Ref. No. ISO 9660.
ISO/IEC 10918-1	Information technology -- Digital compression and coding of continuous-tone still images: Requirements and guidelines. Ref. No. ISO/IEC 10918-1.
ITU-R BS.775	Multi-channel stereophonic sound system with and without accompanying picture. ITU-R Recommendations BS Series. ITU-R BS.775-1.
JPEG	ISO/IEC 10918-1

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

RIS 504	Online data exchange format for records. Published by Recording Industry Association of Japan.
RIS 506	Character set for records. Published by Recording Industry Association of Japan.
Super Audio CD Part 1	Scarlet Book Part 1. Super Audio CD System Description Part 1, Physical Specification, Royal Philips Electronics and Sony Corporation.
Super Audio CD Part 3-General	Scarlet Book Part 3-General. Super Audio CD System Description Part 3, Copy Protection Specification: General Introduction and Specification, Royal Philips Electronics and Sony Corporation.
Super Audio CD Part 3-Player	Scarlet Book Part 3-Player, Super Audio CD System Description, Copy Protection Specification: Player Specification, Royal Philips Electronics and Sony Corporation.
UDF	Universal Disk Format™ Specification. Published by OSTA, Optical Storage Technology Association, see <a href="http://www.osta.org">www.osta.org</a> .

### 1.4 Definitions

The following definitions are used in this specification.

Access List	The Access List is a table providing the relation between Time Code and Sector Address for a DST coded Audio Area.
Album	An Album consists of one or more discs. All discs in an Album must have the same Album_Catalog_Number (see chapter 3.1.1.2.3).
Audio Channel	The stream of DSD bits intended for one loudspeaker.
Audio Frame	A Frame containing Audio data.
Audio Channel Number	The sequence number assigned to an Audio Channel. Audio Channel Numbers are contiguously numbered starting with one.
CCI	Copy Control Information
Constant Byte Rate	The number of Sectors needed to store three Audio Frames is fixed.
Copy Control Information	Information included on Super Audio CD discs that pertains to the number of copies and/or quality of such copies that may be made from permitted digital outputs from Super Audio CD players and from connections from and within Integrated Super Audio CD Player/Recorders and that may include other fields.
Display Track	Display Track[n+Track_Offset] consists of Pause[n] and Track[n] and is used for display purposes.
Display Track Number	Display Track Number = Track Number + Track_Offset. Track_Offset is given in the Area TOC. The maximum value for Display Track Number is 510.
DSD	Direct Stream Digital, the one bit audio signal used on this specification. A DSD signal can either be DST Coded DSD, or Plain DSD.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

DTCP	Digital Transmission Content Protection Specification Version 1.2, (Information Version), Volume 1. See <a href="http://www.dtcp.com">www.dtcp.com</a> .
EKB	Enabling Key Block. A data structure that encodes the revocation state of the Super Audio CD copy protection system, i.e. the Device Keys that have been withdrawn by the Key Issuance Centre.
EOS, eos	End Of Sector.
Elementary Frame	An Audio Frame or a Supplementary Data Frame, or a Padding Frame.
Frame	A block of data belonging to a certain Time Code. The data can be either Audio Data, Supplementary Data, Padding or it can be Multiplexed. The playing time of a Frame is 1/75 Sec.
Hybrid Disc	A Super Audio CD disc with a high density layer and a CD-DA layer.
Index	A subdivision of a Track.
Index Number	An Index Number is the sequence number of an Index within a Track. The start position of Index one is equal to the start position of the Track. The maximum number of Indexes within a Track is 255.
LSN	Logical Sector Number, used to address the Sectors on the disc.
Multiplexed Frame	The part of the multiplexed stream belonging to a certain Time Code. See Frame.
Padding Frame	A Frame containing Padding data.
Pause	Area before the start of a Track. A Pause length of zero is allowed.
Plain DSD	The Direct Stream Digital one bit audio signal that has not been DST coded.
Reserved	All fields labeled Reserved are reserved for future standardization. All Reserved fields must be set to zero.
Sector	The 2048 bytes of Main Data in a Data Frame, see Super Audio CD Part 1 chapter 4.2.2 ( $\neq$ Physical Sector as defined in Super Audio CD Part 1 chapter 4.2.7).
Silence Pattern	A digitally generated DSD pattern with the following properties: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All Audio Bytes (see 5.6.1) have the same value</li><li>• Each Audio Byte must contain 4 bits equal to zero and 4 bits equal to one.</li></ul>
Super Audio CD	The disc as defined in this specification.
Supplementary Data	Additional data multiplexed with the audio signal.
Supplementary Data Frame	A Frame containing Supplementary Data.
Text Channel	Text in the TOC using one language / character set combination. One Text Channel can only use one character set.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

Text Channel Number	The sequence number assigned to a Text Channel. Text Channel Numbers are contiguously numbered starting with one.
TNO, tno	Track Number.
TOC	Table Of Contents. Album and disc related information is stored in the Master TOC. Area and track related information is stored in the Area TOC.
Track	A Track is a contiguous area on the disc with audio information and with one and the same Track number.
Track Number	A Track Number is the sequence number of a Track. The first Track Number in an Audio Area is one. The maximum number of Tracks in an Audio Area is 255.
Variable Byte Rate	The number of Sectors needed to store Audio Frames is variable.

### 1.5 Definitions for DST

The following definitions are used in the DST part of this specification.

Direct Stream Transfer	The lossless coding technique used for DSD signals in Super Audio CD.
DST	See Direct Stream Transfer.
Half Probability	Half Probability defines for each Audio Channel in an Audio Frame whether the first DSD bits are arithmetically encoded using the Ptable values, or using a probability equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ .
Mapping	Mapping defines, for each Segment, the Prediction Filter and Probability Table that is used.
Prediction Filter	A Prediction Filter is a transversal filter used to predict the value of the next DSD bit. A Prediction Filter is characterized by a prediction order and by coefficients.
Probability Table	A probability Table contains the probability that the value of a DSD bit is predicted erroneously for a given output of the prediction filter.
Ptable	Probability Table
Segmentation	Each Audio Channel in an Audio Frame is partitioned into Segments.

## 1.6 Conventions

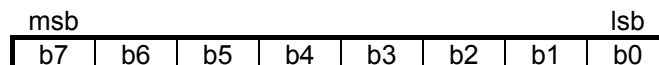
In this version of the Super Audio CD Specification the conventions as described in this chapter are used.

### 1.6.1 Arithmetic and bit operations

$a \gg b$	Right shift a over b bits. The new msb bits are set to '0'.
$a \ll b$	Left shift a over b bits. The new lsb bits are set to '0'.
$a   b$	Bitwise OR of a and b.
$a \& b$	Bitwise AND of a and b.
$\min(a,b)$	Minimum value of a and b.
$\max(a,b)$	Maximum value of a and b.
$a \bmod b$	Value of a modulo b.
$\text{trunc}(a)$	Value of a, rounded downwards.
$\text{roundup}(a)$	Value of a, rounded upwards.
$ a $	Absolute value of a.
$a == b$	Evaluate if a is equal to b.
$a != b$	Evaluate if a is not equal to b.
$a = b$	Variable a is set to the value of b.
$a++$	$a = a + 1$
$a -= b$	$a = a - b$
$a += b$	$a = a + b$
$a \wedge b$	Bitwise Exclusive OR of a and b.

### 1.6.2 Bit ordering

The graphical representation of all multiple-bit quantities is such that the most significant bit (msb) is on the left, and the least significant bit (lsb) is on the right. Figure 1-1 defines the bit position in a Byte.



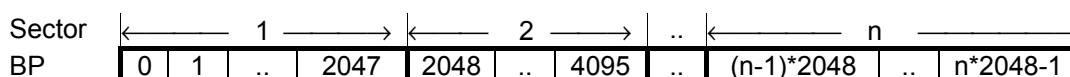
**Figure 1-1 : Bit ordering in a Byte**

### 1.6.3 Bit sequence

In all places where a bit sequence is used, a most significant bit first notation is used.

### 1.6.4 Byte position

The bytes in a series of n Sectors are successively numbered 0 .. n\*2048-1. Figure 1-2 defines the Byte position (BP) in a series of n Sectors.



**Figure 1-2 : Byte position in a series of n Sectors**

### 1.6.5 Decimal notation

All Decimal values are preceded by a blank space or the range indicator (..) when included in a range. The most significant digit is on the left, the least significant digit is on the right.

### 1.6.6 DSD bit order

The first sampled DSD bit is stored in the most significant bit of a byte. See chapter 5.6.1.

### 1.6.7 DSD Polarity

A DSD bit equal to one means "plus". A DSD bit equal to zero means "minus".

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 1.6.8 Hex notation

All Hexadecimal values are preceded by a \$. The most significant nibble is on the left, the least significant nibble is on the right.

### 1.6.9 Range

Constant\_1..Constant\_2 denotes the range from and including Constant\_1 up to and including Constant\_2, in increments of 1.

### 1.6.10 Until

Until is used in figures to indicate that for a structure Byte Positions are used upto (not including) a given value.

At Byte Position B1, the expression "until B2" specifies B2-B1 bytes. At Byte Position B1, the expression "until eos" specifies the number of bytes from B1 upto and including the last byte of the current Sector. Note that Byte Position is specified relative to the start of the current, or a previous, Sector.

## 1.7 Basic Types

In this version of the Super Audio CD Specification the Basic Types as described in this chapter are used.

### 1.7.1 Simple types

#### 1.7.1.1 BsMsbf

Bit Sequence, Most Significant Bit First, must be interpreted as a Bit String.

#### 1.7.1.2 Char

A one-byte character, encoded according to ISO 646. The NUL (\$00) character is not allowed for Char.

#### 1.7.1.3 SiMsbf

Bit sequence, Most Significant Bit First, must be interpreted as Signed Integer using two's complement notation.

#### 1.7.1.4 UiMsbf

Bit sequence, Most Significant Bit First, must be interpreted as Unsigned Integer.

#### 1.7.1.5 Uintn

An n bit, binary encoded, unsigned numerical value.

#### 1.7.1.6 Uint8

An 8 bit, binary encoded, unsigned numerical value. A Uint8 value must be recorded in a one-byte field.

#### 1.7.1.7 Uint16

A 16-bit, binary encoded, unsigned numerical value. A Uint16 value, represented by the hexadecimal representation \$wxyz, must be recorded in a two-byte field as \$wx \$yz (most significant byte first).

#### 1.7.1.8 Uint32

A 32-bit, binary encoded, unsigned numerical value. A Uint32 value, represented by the hexadecimal representation \$stuvwxyz, must be recorded in a four-byte field as \$st \$uv \$wx \$yz (most significant byte first).

## 1.7.2 Complex types

### 1.7.2.1 Date

The syntax of Date is defined in Figure 1-3.

	# bytes	format	value
Date() {			
Year	2	Uint16	
Month	1	Uint8	0..12
Day	1	Uint8	0..31
}			

**Figure 1-3 : Syntax of Date**

The value of the Year field has a range of 0..65535. The value of the Month field has a range of 0..12, with 1..12 meaning January .. December. The value of the Day field has a range of 0..31. The value zero for Year, Month and Day is only allowed if a valid Date is not available.

### 1.7.2.2 Genre\_Code

The syntax of Genre\_Code is defined in Figure 1-4.

	# bytes	format	value
Genre_Code() {			
Genre_Table	1	Genre_Table	
Reserved	1	Uint8	0
Genre_Index	2	Uint16	
}			

**Figure 1-4 : Syntax of Genre\_Code**

If a Genre\_Code is not used, Genre\_Table and Genre\_Index must be set to zero.

#### 1.7.2.2.1 Genre\_Table

Genre\_Table identifies the table used by Genre\_Index. The definition of the values for Genre\_Table is given in Figure 1-5.

Value	Table format
0	Not used.
1	General Genre Table. See Annex B.
2	Japanese Genre Table. See RIS504.
3..255	Reserved for future standardization.

**Figure 1-5 : Definition of Genre\_Table**

#### 1.7.2.2.2 Genre\_Index

Genre\_Index contains the index to the selected Genre\_Table that will give the actual genre definition. If Genre\_Table is equal to zero, then Genre\_Index must be set to zero.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 1.7.2.3 Genre4

The syntax of Genre4 is defined in Figure 1-6.

	# bytes	format
Genre4() {		
for (i=1; i<=4; i++) {		
Genre_Code[i]	4	Genre_Code
}		
}		

**Figure 1-6 : Syntax of Genre4**

If used, Genre\_Code fields are available, they must start at i=1. The unused Genre\_Code fields must follow the used Genre\_Code fields.

### 1.7.2.4 Spec\_Version

Spec\_Version is a 2 byte number showing the version number of the format, used in this disc. The syntax of Spec\_Version is defined in Figure 1-7.

	# bytes	format	value
Spec_Version() {			
Major_Version	1	UInt8	2
Minor_Version	1	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 1-7 : Syntax of Spec\_Version**

Major\_Version must contain the major version number of this specification. Minor\_Version must contain the minor version number of this specification. For discs according to this specification, Major\_Version is equal to 2 and Minor\_Version is equal to 0.

### 1.7.2.5 Special\_Char

Special\_Char is a text character with a length of one or two bytes, depending on the character set used for Special\_Char.

### 1.7.2.6 Special\_String

Special\_String is a sequence of Special\_Char one or two byte characters, terminated by a zero Special\_Char. The syntax of Special\_String is defined in Figure 1-8.

	# bytes	format	value
Special_String() {			
for (i=1; i<=n; i++) {			
Character[i]	1..2	Special_Char	
}			
Zero_Special_Char	1..2	Special_Char	0
}			

**Figure 1-8 : Syntax of Special\_String**

All Characters in a Special\_String must belong to one and the same character set. If the Characters are from a one byte character set, the length of Zero\_Special\_Char is one byte. If the Characters are from a two byte character set, the length of Zero\_Special\_Char is two bytes. A zero length Special\_String is allowed. A zero length Special\_String only contains a Zero\_Special\_Char.

### 1.7.2.7 String

A string of characters encoded according to ISO 646 IRV. Control Characters are not allowed. The syntax of String is defined in Figure 1-9.

	# bytes	format
String(){		
for (i=1; i<=n; i++){		
Character[i]	1	Char
}		
}		

**Figure 1-9 : Syntax of String**

### 1.7.2.8 Text\_Channels

The syntax of Text\_Channels is defined in Figure 1-10.

	# bytes	format	value
Text_Channels(){			
N_Text_Channels	1	UInt8	0..8
Reserved	7	UInt8	0
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++){			
{			
Language_Code[c]	2	String	
Character_Set_Code[c]	1	Character_Set_Code	1..7
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
}			
Reserved	32-4*N_Text_Channels	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 1-10 : Syntax of Text\_Channels**

The used Text Channels must be encoded starting with Text Channel Number c equal to one. All unused Text Channels must have a Text Channel Number c, higher than the Text Channel Number of all used Text Channels. It is recommended that an Super Audio CD player uses Text Channel one as the default Text Channel.

If the same data combination is used in the Text Channels of both the Master TOC and the Area TOC, it is recommended to use the same Text Channel Number order for the Master TOC and for the Area TOC.

If N\_Text\_Channels is not equal to zero, at least one text item must be present in each used Text Channel.

#### 1.7.2.8.1 N\_Text\_Channels

N\_Text\_Channels contains the number of Text Channels used. The maximum allowed value for N\_Text\_Channels is 8. A value of zero is allowed for N\_Text\_Channels. N\_Text\_Channels must be equal to the number of used Text Channels.

#### 1.7.2.8.2 Language\_Code

Language\_Code[c] must contain the ISO 639 Language Code that is used with Text Channel c. All text in Text Channel c must be according to this Language Code. The value \$0000 is not allowed for Language\_Code[c].

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 1.7.2.8.3 Character\_Set\_Code

Character\_Set\_Code[c] defines the character set used for Text Channel c. The definition of Character\_Set\_Code is given in Figure 1-11. All text in Text Channel c must be encoded using this Character Set. The value zero is not allowed for Character\_Set\_Code[c].

Code	Bytes per character	Description
0	--	Not used
1	1	ISO 646 International Reference Version (IRV), escape sequences are not allowed
2	1	ISO 8859-1, escape sequences are not allowed
3	2	RIS 506
4	2	Korean KSC 5601-1989[149]
5	2	Chinese GB 2312-80[58]
6	2	Big5
7	1	ISO 8859-1, escape sequences to single byte character sets are allowed
8..255	--	Reserved for future standardization

Note: Numbers in between square brackets [ ] are the ISO 2022 registration numbers

**Figure 1-11 : Definition of Character Set**

For the usage of escape sequences see ISO 2022. Note that one Text Channel can only use one Character\_Set\_Code. Note that in a 2 byte character set each character has a length of 2 bytes.

#### 1.7.2.8.3.1 Control Characters

With ISO 646 and ISO 8859-1 it is not allowed to use the DEL character (\$7F) and the C0 set of Control Characters, with the following exceptions:

- The ESC (\$1B) character with ISO 8859-1 and Character\_Set\_Code equal to seven.
- The LF (\$0A) character with ISO 646 and ISO 8859-1 when used in Supplementary Data or in the Extension Area. The LF character has the functionality to position next character on a new line. In the Master TOC and in the Area TOC the LF character is not allowed.

### 1.7.2.9 Time\_Code

The syntax of Time\_Code is defined in Figure 1-12.

	# bytes	format	value
Time_Code() {			
Minutes	1	UInt8	0..255
Seconds	1	UInt8	0..59
Frames	1	UInt8	0..74
}			

**Figure 1-12 : Syntax of Time\_Code**

The value of the Minutes field has a range of 0..255. The value of the Seconds field has a range of 0..59. The value of the Frames field has a range of 0..74. If both the Minutes, Seconds and Frame fields are set to \$FF, a valid Time\_Code is not available.

### 1.7.2.10 TOC\_Text

The length of a TOC\_Text structure must be a multiple of 4 bytes. The syntax of TOC\_Text is defined in Figure 1-13.

	# bytes	format	value
TOC_Text () {			
Text_Type	1	Text_Type	
Padding1	1	Char	\$20
Sp_String		Special_String	
Padding2	0..3	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 1-13 : Syntax of TOC\_Text**

#### 1.7.2.10.1 Text\_Type

Text\_Type gives the type of text encoded in this TOC\_Text. The definition of Text\_Type is given in Figure 1-14.

Value	Meaning
0	Reserved
1	Title
2	Name(s) of the performer(s)
3	Name(s) of the songwriter(s)
4	Name(s) of the composer(s)
5	Name(s) of the arranger(s)
6	Message(s) from the content provider and/or the artist
7	Extra message(s)
8	Copyright
9..127	Reserved
128	Reserved
129	Title, phonetic text
130	Name(s) of the performer(s), phonetic text
131	Name(s) of the songwriter(s), phonetic text
132	Name(s) of the composer(s), phonetic text
133	Name(s) of the arranger(s), phonetic text
134	Message(s) from the content provider and/or the artist, phonetic text
135	Extra message(s), phonetic text
136	Copyright, phonetic text
137..255	Reserved

**Figure 1-14 : Definition of Text\_Type**

#### 1.7.2.10.2 Padding1

The Padding1 field must contain one space character (\$ 20).

#### 1.7.2.10.3 Sp\_String

Sp\_String contains the text information for the TOC\_Text structure. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

#### 1.7.2.10.4 Padding2

The Padding2 field must be used to adjust the length of the TOC\_Text structure to a multiple of four bytes. All bytes in the Padding2 field must be set to zero.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 1.7.2.11 Weblink\_String

Weblink\_String is a sequence of Char followed by a zero byte. A zero length Weblink\_String is allowed. A zero length Weblink\_String contains one Zero\_Byte. The maximum length of Weblink\_String is 128 bytes. The definition of Weblink\_String is given in Figure 1-15.

	# bytes	format	value
Weblink_String(){ for (i=1; i<=n; i++){ Character[i] } Zero_Byte }	1	Char	
	1	UInt8	0

**Figure 1-15 : Syntax of Weblink\_String**

Weblink\_String must contain a full URL, an example of a valid Weblink\_String is "http://www.weblink.net",0.

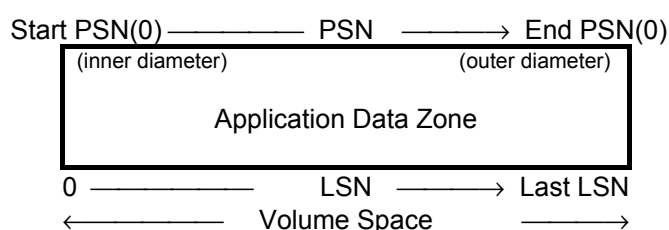
## 2. Disc Layout

### 2.1 Volume Space

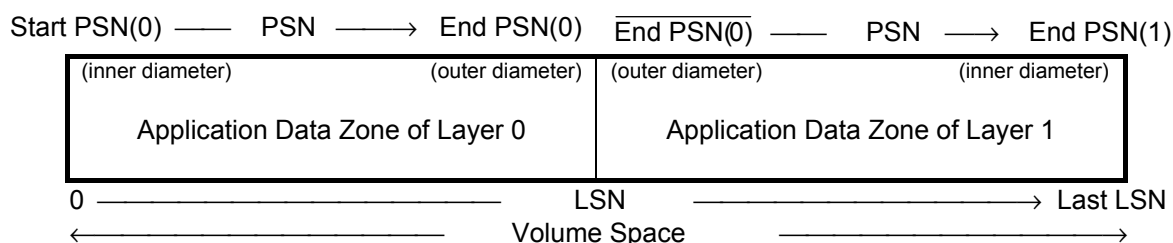
The High Density layer of a Super Audio CD disc is used as one single logical volume. The definition of the physical format is defined in Super Audio CD Part 1, Physical Specification.

The length of a Logical Sector must be 2048 bytes, which is equal to the length of a Physical Sector. Each Logical Sector of a volume is identified by a unique Logical Sector Number. Logical Sector Numbers must be consecutive integers assigned in ascending order to the Physical Sectors on the disc. For the High Density Layer of a Hybrid or Single Layer Super Audio CD disc, the relation between Physical Sector Number and Logical Sector Number is defined in Figure 2-1. For a Dual Layer Super Audio CD disc, the relation between Physical Sector Number and Logical Sector Number is defined in Figure 2-2.

Logical Sector Number 0 must be assigned to Sector Start PSN of Physical Layer 0. The value of Start PSN is equal to the value given by Bytes 5 to 7 of Application Data Zone allocation, see Super Audio CD Part 1 chapter 4.3.4.5.1.



**Figure 2-1 : Volume Space of a disc with one High Density Layer**



**Figure 2-2 : Volume Space of a Dual Layer disc**

Start PSN(0)	The first Physical Sector number of the Application Data Zone of Layer 0.
End PSN(i)	The end Physical Sector number of the Application Data Zone of Layer i (i=0, 1).
$\overline{\text{End PSN}(0)}$	Is calculated such that each bit of End PSN(0) is inverted (ones are replaced with zeros and vice versa).
Last LSN	The last Logical Sector Number of the Logical Volume.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 2.2 Structure of the Volume Space

The Volume Space of a disc according to this version of the Super Audio CD Specification is split into: File System Area, DTCP Area, EKB1 Area, Master TOC Area, Rev TOC Area, 2-Channel Stereo Area, Multi Channel Area, Extension Area, EKB2 Area, Revocation Data Area and Extra Data Area. In discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower, the EKB1 Area, the Rev TOC Area, the Extension Area, the EKB2 Area and the Revocation Data Area do not exist. The structure of the Volume Space is shown in Figure 2-3.



Figure 2-3 : Structure of the Volume Space

The 2-Channel Stereo Area and the Multi Channel Area are called Audio Areas. Every Super Audio CD disc according to this version of the Super Audio CD Specification must contain the Master TOC Area, the DTCP Area, the EKB1 Area, the Rev TOC Area, the EKB2 Area, the Revocation Data Area and minimally one Audio Area. The 2-Channel Stereo Area must be present on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 2.0 or higher. Note that the 2-Channel Stereo Area is optionally present on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower. The presence of the Extension Area and the Extra Data Area is optional.

Gaps between the 2-Channel Stereo Area, the Multi Channel Area, the Extension Area and the EKB2 Area are allowed. There is a gap of three Sectors between the Rev TOC Area and the 2-Channel Stereo Area. The content of all Sectors in the gaps is reserved for future use and must be set to zero.

#### 2.2.1 File System Area

A Super Audio CD disc can optionally contain the ISO 9660 and/or the UDF file systems. The File System Area starts at LSN 0 and ends at LSN 399. It is recommended that all file system structures are stored in the File System Area. When needed file system structures also can be stored in the Extra Data Area. The content of all not used Sectors in the File System Area must be set to zero. If no file system is used, the content of all Sectors in the File System Area must be set to zero.

#### 2.2.2 DTCP Area

The DTCP Area contains DTCP information, see chapter 3.3. The DTCP area starts at LSN 400 and has a length of 48 Sectors.

#### 2.2.3 EKB1 Area, EKB2 Area

The EKB1 Area and the EKB2 Area each contain one copy of EKB\_Data. EKB\_Data is defined in chapter 3.4. The start address of the EKB1 Area is given in the Master\_TOC (see chapter 3.1.1.6.11). The start address of the EKB2 Area is given in the Master\_TOC (see chapter 3.1.1.6.12). Both the EKB1 Area and the EKB2 Area have a length of 62 Sectors. The EKB1 Area and the EKB2 Area are not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

#### 2.2.4 Master TOC Area

The Master TOC Area contains three identical copies of the Master TOC. The Master TOC describes the High Density layer of a Super Audio CD. The three instances of the Master TOC are stored starting at LSN 510, 520 and 530. Figure 2-4 shows the structure of the Master TOC Area.

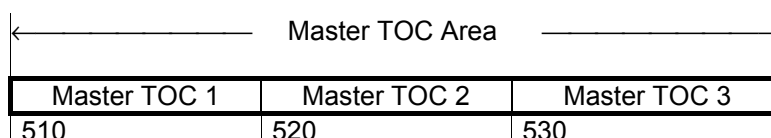
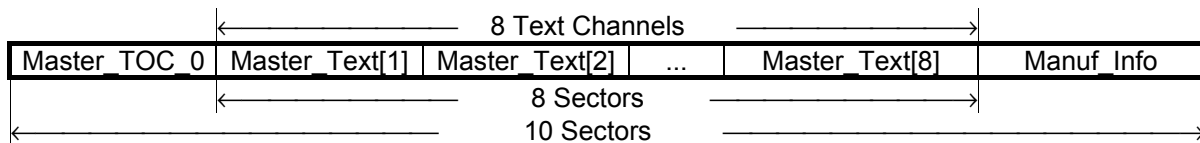


Figure 2-4 : Structure of the Master TOC Area

#### 2.2.4.1 Master TOC

The Master TOC has a fixed size of 10 Sectors. The content of the Master TOC is defined in chapter 3.1. Figure 2-5 shows the structure of the Master TOC.



**Figure 2-5 : Structure of the Master TOC**

#### 2.2.5 Rev TOC Area

The Rev TOC Area contains the Revocation\_TOC, see chapter 3.5. The Rev TOC Area starts at LSN 540, the length of the Rev TOC Area is one Sector. The content of the Revocation\_TOC is defined in chapter 3.5. The Rev TOC Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

#### 2.2.6 Audio Areas

Each Audio Area according to this version of the Super Audio CD Specification contains Area TOC-1, the Track Area, Area TOC-2 and optionally Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4. Area TOC-2 is a copy of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-4 is a copy of Area TOC-3. Note that discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower only contain Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2.

The format of Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2 is according to Version 1.3 of the Super Audio CD Specification. Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 contain the information needed by Super Audio CD players according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 2.0 or higher. Both Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 contain control information for the Audio Area.

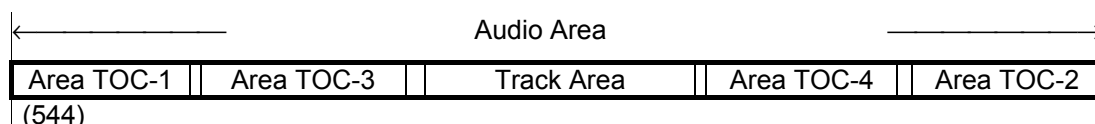
The Track Area contains the Tracks with audio information.

The audio information is stored in Audio Tracks. All 2-Channel Stereo Tracks are grouped in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. All Multi Channel Tracks are grouped in the Multi Channel Area. Each Audio Area contains Area TOC-1, a Track Area with Audio Tracks and Area TOC-2. Each Audio Area optionally contains Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.

Gaps between the Track Area and both Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 are allowed. Gaps between Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-3 and between Area TOC-4 and Area TOC-2 are allowed. The content of all Sectors in the gaps is Reserved.

If a 2-Channel Stereo Area is present, the 2-Channel Stereo Area must start at LSN 544. If a 2-Channel Stereo Area is not present, the Multi Channel Area must start at LSN 544. Note that the 2-Channel Stereo Area must be present on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 2.0 or higher, and that the 2-Channel Stereo Area optionally is present on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower.

The structure of an Audio Area is given in Figure 2-6.



**Figure 2-6 : Structure of an Audio Area**



## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 2.2.6.1 Area TOC

The content of Area TOC-1 is equal to the content of Area TOC-2. Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2 are referred to as Area TOC-A. The content of Area TOC-3 is equal to the content of Area TOC-4. Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 are referred to as Area TOC-B.

Area TOC-A contains information according to the definitions in Super Audio CD Part 2 Version 1.3. Area TOC-B contains features not defined in Super Audio CD Part 2 Version 1.3 or lower. Area TOC-B is intended to be used by players according to version 2.0 or higher of the Super Audio CD specification. Area TOC-A is intended for players according to Super Audio CD specification version 1.3 or lower. Note that both Area TOC-A and Area TOC-B must have the same value of Spec\_Version.

The start location and length of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 is for each Audio Area given in the Master TOC, see chapter 3.1.1.6. The content of the Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 is defined in chapter 3.2. Figure 2-7 shows the structure of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.

Area name	Number of Sectors
Area_TOC_0	1
Track_List_1	1
Track_List_2	1
ISRC_and_Genre_List	2
Access_List	p
Track_Text	q
Index_List	r
Track_WebLink_List	s
Track_List_3	t
Set_Of_PlayLists	u

**Figure 2-7 : Structure of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4**

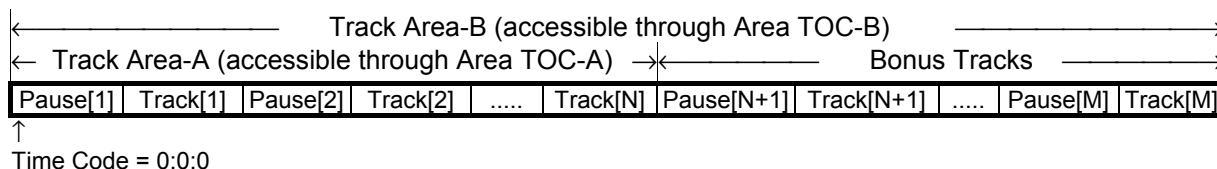
Area\_TOC\_0, Track\_List\_1, Track\_List\_2 and ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List must always be present in an Area TOC. The presence of Track\_Text, Index\_List, Track\_WebLink\_List and Set\_Of\_PlayLists are optional. Track\_List\_3 is conditionally present, see chapter 3.2.9. If Access\_List and/or Track\_Text and/or Index\_List and/or Track\_WebLink\_List and/or Track\_List\_3 and/or Set\_Of\_PlayLists are present in an Area TOC, Area\_TOC\_0 contains pointers to these lists. Access\_List must only be present if an Audio Area is DST coded (see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1). The values of p, q, r, s, t and u are given in chapter 3.2.

In Area TOC-A, Track\_List\_3 and Set\_Of\_PlayLists are not allowed. In Area TOC-A the values of t and u must be equal to zero.

### 2.2.6.2 Track Area

Where the term Track Area is used, this refers to the Tracks in Track Area-A for Area TOC-A and to the Tracks in Track Area-B for Area TOC-B.

The start and end position of a Track Area are given in the Area TOC for that Audio Area (see chapters 3.2.1.2.13 and 3.2.1.2.14). The last Sector of the Track Area is the last Sector used by the last Track of that Track Area. Maximum 255 Tracks are allowed in a Track Area. The layout of a Track Area is given in Figure 2-8.



**Figure 2-8 : Layout of the Track Area**

For Track[1] to Track[N], the start location, length and other information is given in the Area TOC-A and in Area TOC-B (see chapter 3.2) of the Audio Area where the Track belongs to.

For Track[N+1] to Track[M], the start location, length and other information is given only in Area TOC-B (see chapter 3.2) of the Audio Area where the Track belongs to. Track[N+1] to Track[M] are called Bonus Tracks. The presence of Bonus Tracks is optional.

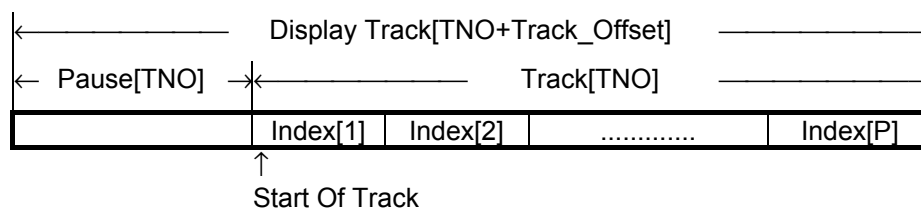
The value of N\_Tracks in Area TOC-A is equal to the value of N. The value of N\_Tracks in Area TOC-B is equal to the value of M. The value of M must be greater than or equal to the value of N. The presence of Bonus Tracks is indicated by the value of First\_Bonus\_Track\_Number in Area Data of Area TOC-B, see chapter 3.2.1.2.12. The total playing time of Track Area-A must minimally be equal to 80% of the total playing time of Track Area-B.

#### 2.2.6.2.1 Time Code

The Track Area contains a Time Code. The Time Code starts with zero (0:0:0) at the start of Pause[1]. The Time Code increments in steps of 1/75 Second to the end of the Track Area. A time unity of 1/75 Second is called a Frame. The Time Code is encoded in the Multiplexed Frames, see chapter 5.3.1.1.5.1.

#### 2.2.6.2.2 Track

All Tracks in a Track Area are consecutively numbered starting with one. It is not allowed for Tracks to overlap. However, the first Frame of a Track can be located in a Sector that contains the end of the last Frame of the previous Track. The minimum length of a Track is 1 Second. A Track is subdivided into Indexes, see Figure 2-9.



**Figure 2-9 : Layout of a Track**

Start Of Track for Track[TNO] is the Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[TNO] as defined in Track\_List\_2 of the Area TOC, see chapter 3.2.3.

Note: Pause[TNO] is not encoded as Index[0].

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 2.2.6.2.2.1 Index

The first Index in a Track is Index[1]. Indexes must be numbered consecutively to the end of the Track. Maximum 255 Indexes are allowed per Track. The start of Index[1] is equal to the start of the Track. For Index[2] and following Indexes, the start Time Code is given in the Area TOC, see chapter 3.2.7. The minimum length of an Index is 1 Frame.

### 2.2.6.2.3 Pause

Each Track is preceded by a Pause. The Pause area that precedes Track[i] is called Pause[i]. The minimum length of a Pause is zero Seconds.

### 2.2.6.2.4 Display Time

It is recommended that an Super Audio CD player calculates a Time Code relative to the Start Of Track (see Figure 2-9), for display purposes.

### 2.2.6.2.5 Display Track

It is recommended that the Track Number displayed by an Super Audio CD player is equal to the value of TNO+Track\_Offset (see chapter 3.2.1.2.10), from the start of Pause[TNO] to the end of Track[TNO].

### 2.2.6.2.6 General Audio Encoding

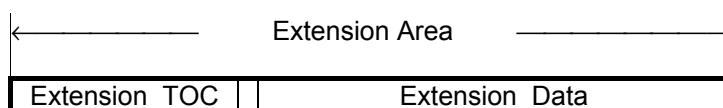
Depending on the Area, the encoded audio information in the Audio Tracks and in the preceding Pauses can be either Plain DSD, or DST coded DSD. The data in the Audio Tracks and Pauses will be multiplexed with Supplementary Data.

The audio information in the 2-Channel Stereo Area can be either Plain DSD or DST coded DSD. If the 2-Channel Stereo Area contains Bonus Tracks, the 2-Channel Stereo Area must be DST coded DSD. The audio information in the Multi Channel Area must be DST coded DSD.

The multiplexed audio information in an Area with Plain DSD has a Constant Byte Rate. The multiplexed audio information in an Area with DST coded DSD has a Variable Byte Rate.

## 2.2.7 Extension Area

The contents of the Extension Area is defined in chapter 6. The Extension Area starts with the Extension\_TOC followed by Extension\_Data. A gap between the Extension\_TOC and Extension\_Data is allowed. The structure of the Extension Area is shown in Figure 2-10.



**Figure 2-10 : Structure of the Extension Area**

The start locations of Extension\_TOC and Extension\_Data, the length of the Extension\_TOC, and the end location of Extension\_Data are given in Disc\_Info\_2 in the Master TOC, see chapter 3.1.1.6.

## 2.2.8 Revocation Data Area

The Revocation Data Area contains data to be used by Approved Secure Digital Interfaces, see Super Audio CD Part 3-General. The Revocation TOC (see chapter 3.5) contains pointers to the actual revocation data. The Revocation Data Area has a fixed size of 1024 Sectors. The Revocation Data Area is not present on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

## 2.2.9 Extra Data Area

The Extra Data Area can optionally be used to store additional audio related information.

## 3. TOC structure

The TOC of the high density layer has a two level structure, the highest level is the Master TOC, (see chapter 3.1) and the lower level is formed by the Area TOC (see chapter 3.2). The Master TOC contains album information and disc information. The Area TOC contains area information and track information. The Extra Data Area does not contain an Area TOC.

### 3.1 Master TOC

The Master TOC has a fixed length of 10 Sectors. The first Sector of the Master TOC is called Master\_TOC\_0. Master\_TOC\_0 contains general information on the disc, such as the size and location of the Audio Areas, album information, disc catalog number, disc genre and disc date.

Master\_TOC\_0 is followed by eight Sectors with maximum eight Text Channels that contain general information on the disc. For each Text Channel a language code and a character set code is defined in Master\_TOC\_0.

The syntax of the Master TOC is defined in Figure 3-1.

	# bytes	format
Master_TOC() {		
Master_TOC_0()	2048	Master_TOC_0
for (c=1; c<=8; c++)		
{		
Master_Text() [c]	2048	Master_Text
}		
Manuf_Info()	2048	Manuf_Info
}		

**Figure 3-1 : Syntax of the Master TOC**

#### 3.1.1 Master\_TOC\_0

The syntax of Master\_TOC\_0 is defined in Figure 3-2.

	# bytes	format	value
Master_TOC_0() {			
M_TOC_0_Header()	16	M_TOC_0_Header	
Album_Info()	48	Album_Info	
Disc_Info()	64	Disc_Info	
Text_Channels()	40	Text_Channels	
Disc_WebLink_Info()	128	Disc_WebLink_Info	
Disc_Info_2()	64	Disc_Info_2	
Reserved	until 2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-2 : Syntax of Master\_TOC\_0**

##### 3.1.1.1 M\_TOC\_0\_Header

The syntax of M\_TOC\_0\_Header is defined in Figure 3-3.

	# bytes	format	value
M_TOC_0_Header() {			
Master_TOC_Signature	8	String	"SACDMTOC"
Spec_Version	2	Spec_Version	
Reserved	6	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-3 : Syntax of Master\_TOC\_0\_Header**

##### 3.1.1.1.1 Master\_TOC\_Signature

Master\_TOC\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the Master TOC. The value of Master\_TOC\_Signature must be "SACDMTOC" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$4D \$54 \$4F \$43).

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 3.1.1.1.2 Spec\_Version

Spec\_Version must contain the Spec\_Version as is defined in chapter 1.7.2.4.

### 3.1.1.2 Album\_Info

The syntax of Album\_Info is defined in Figure 3-4.

	# bytes	format	value
Album_Info(){			
Album_Set_Size	2	Uint16	1..65535
Album_Sequence_Number	2	Uint16	1..Album_Set_Size
Reserved	4	Uint8	0
Album_Catalog_Number	16	String	
Album_Genre	16	Genre4	
Reserved	8	Uint8	0
/**/ Album text fields are in Master_Text[c] with c=1..8 ***/			
}			

**Figure 3-4 : Syntax of Album\_Info**

#### 3.1.1.2.1 Album\_Set\_Size

Album\_Set\_Size must contain the total number of discs in this album. The minimum allowed value for Album\_Set\_Size is one. All discs in one Album must have the same value of Album\_Set\_Size.

#### 3.1.1.2.2 Album\_Sequence\_Number

Album\_Sequence\_Number must contain the sequence number of this disc within the album. The Album\_Sequence\_Number must be numbered consecutively over all discs in an Album. The first disc from an Album must have set the Album\_Sequence\_Number equal to one.

The minimum allowed value for Album\_Sequence\_Number is one. The maximum allowed value of Album\_Sequence\_Number is the value of Album\_Set\_Size.

#### 3.1.1.2.3 Album\_Catalog\_Number

Album\_Catalog\_Number contains the catalog number of this album. All discs in one Album must have the same Album\_Catalog\_Number. It is recommended to use the UPC/EAN catalog number. The Album\_Catalog\_Number field must be padded at the end with bytes with space characters (\$20). If an Album\_Catalog\_Number is not used, all bytes must be set to zero.

#### 3.1.1.2.4 Album\_Genre

The syntax of Album\_Genre is defined in chapter 1.7.2.3. Album\_Genre contains minimum zero and maximum four genres associated with this Super Audio CD album. It is recommended that all discs in one Album have the same Album\_Genre.

### 3.1.1.3 Disc\_Info

The syntax of Disc\_Info is defined in Figure 3-5.

	# bytes	format	value
Disc_Info(){			
2CH_TOC_1_Address	4	Uint32	0, 544
2CH_TOC_2_Address	4	Uint32	
MC_TOC_1_Address	4	Uint32	
MC_TOC_2_Address	4	Uint32	
Disc_Flags	1	Disc_Flags	
Reserved	3	Uint8	0
2CH_TOC_Length	2	Uint16	0, 5..
MC_TOC_Length	2	Uint16	0, 37..
Disc_Catalog_Number	16	String	
Disc_Genre	16	Genre4	
Disc_Date	4	Date	
Reserved	4	Uint8	0
/*** Disc text fields are in Master_Text[c] with c=1..8 ***/			
}			

**Figure 3-5 : Syntax of Disc\_Info**

#### 3.1.1.3.1 2CH\_TOC\_1\_Address

2CH\_TOC\_1\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of Area TOC-1 in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. If the 2-Channel Stereo Area is not present, the value of 2CH\_TOC\_1\_Address must be zero. If the 2-Channel Stereo Area is present, the value of 2CH\_TOC\_1\_Address must be 544.

#### 3.1.1.3.2 2CH\_TOC\_2\_Address

2CH\_TOC\_2\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of Area TOC-2 in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. If the 2-Channel Stereo Area is not present, the value of 2CH\_TOC\_2\_Address must be zero.

#### 3.1.1.3.3 MC\_TOC\_1\_Address

MC\_TOC\_1\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of Area TOC-1 in the Multi Channel Area. If the Multi Channel Area is not present, the value of MC\_TOC\_1\_Address must be zero.

#### 3.1.1.3.4 MC\_TOC\_2\_Address

MC\_TOC\_2\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of Area TOC-2 in the Multi Channel Area. If the Multi Channel Area is not present, the value of MC\_TOC\_2\_Address must be zero.

#### 3.1.1.3.5 Disc\_Flags

The format of Disc\_Flags must be as defined in Figure 3-6.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Hybr		Reserved = 0					

**Figure 3-6 : Format of Disc\_Flags**

##### 3.1.1.3.5.1 Hybr bit

The Hybr bit must be set to one on a Hybrid Disc. The Hybr bit must be set to zero on a not-Hybrid Disc.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 3.1.1.3.6 2CH\_TOC\_Length

2CH\_TOC\_Length must contain the length in Sectors of Area TOC-A in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. If the 2-Channel Stereo Area is not present, the value of 2CH\_TOC\_Length must be zero.

#### 3.1.1.3.7 MC\_TOC\_Length

MC\_TOC\_Length must contain the length in Sectors of Area TOC-A in the Multi Channel Area. If the Multi Channel Area is not present, the value of MC\_TOC\_Length must be zero.

#### 3.1.1.3.8 Disc\_Catalog\_Number

Disc\_Catalog\_Number is a 16 byte String that uniquely identifies each disc in an Album. The string is padded at the end with space characters (\$20). If a Disc\_Catalog\_Number is not used, all bytes must be set to zero.

#### 3.1.1.3.9 Disc\_Genre

The syntax of Disc\_Genre is defined in chapter 1.7.2.3. Disc\_Genre contains minimum zero and maximum four genres associated with this Super Audio CD disc.

#### 3.1.1.3.10 Disc\_Date

Disc\_Date contains the creation date of the disc. For the encoding of Disc\_Date, see chapter 1.7.2.1. If Disc\_Date is not used, all fields of Disc\_Date must be set to zero.

#### 3.1.1.4 Text\_Channels

Text\_Channels contains the definition of the Text Channels used in the Master TOC. All text in Master\_Text[c] must be according to the definitions in Text\_Channels for Text Channel c. For the definition of Text\_Channels, see chapter 1.7.2.8.

#### 3.1.1.5 Disc\_WebLink\_Info

The syntax of Disc\_WebLink\_Info is defined in Figure 3-7.

	# bytes	format	value
Disc_WebLink_Info() {			
Disc_WebLink	n	WebLink_String	
Reserved	128-n	Uint8	0
}			

Figure 3-7 : Syntax of Disc\_WebLink\_Info

#### 3.1.1.5.1 Disc\_WebLink

Disc\_WebLink contains a WebLink\_String (see chapter 1.7.2.11) that points to a web page with information about this disc.

### 3.1.1.6 Disc\_Info\_2

The syntax of Disc\_Info\_2 is defined in Figure 3-8.

	# bytes	format	value
Disc_Info_2() {			
2CH_TOC_3_Address	4	Uint32	
2CH_TOC_4_Address	4	Uint32	
MC_TOC_3_Address	4	Uint32	
MC_TOC_4_Address	4	Uint32	
Reserved	4	Uint8	0
2CH_TOC_B_Length	2	Uint16	
MC_TOC_B_Length	2	Uint16	
E_TOC_Address	4	Uint32	
E_TOC_Length	2	Uint16	
Reserved	2	Uint8	0
E_Data_Start_Address	4	Uint32	
E_Data_End_Address	4	Uint32	
EKB1_Area_Address	4	Uint32	
EKB2_Area_Address	4	Uint32	
Rev_Area_Start_Address	4	Uint32	
Rev_Area_End_Address	4	Uint32	
Reserved	8	Uint8	0
}			

**Figure 3-8 : Syntax of Disc\_Info\_2**

#### 3.1.1.6.1 2CH\_TOC\_3\_Address

2CH\_TOC\_3\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of Area TOC-3 in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. A value of zero for 2CH\_TOC\_3\_Address means that Area TOC-3 is not available in the 2-Channel Stereo Area.

#### 3.1.1.6.2 2CH\_TOC\_4\_Address

2CH\_TOC\_4\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of Area TOC-4 in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. A value of zero for 2CH\_TOC\_4\_Address means that Area TOC-4 is not available in the 2-Channel Stereo Area.

#### 3.1.1.6.3 MC\_TOC\_3\_Address

MC\_TOC\_3\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of Area TOC-3 in the Multi Channel Area. A value of zero for MC\_TOC\_3\_Address means that Area TOC-3 is not available in the Multi Channel Area.

#### 3.1.1.6.4 MC\_TOC\_4\_Address

MC\_TOC\_4\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of Area TOC-4 in the Multi Channel Area. A value of zero for MC\_TOC\_4\_Address means that Area TOC-4 is not available in the Multi Channel Area.

#### 3.1.1.6.5 2CH\_TOC\_B\_Length

2CH\_TOC\_B\_Length must contain the length in Sectors of Area TOC-B in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. If Area TOC-B is not present in the 2-Channel Stereo Area, or if the 2-Channel Stereo Area is not present, the value of 2CH\_TOC\_B\_Length must be zero.

#### 3.1.1.6.6 MC\_TOC\_B\_Length

MC\_TOC\_B\_Length must contain the length in Sectors of Area TOC-B in the Multi Channel Area. If Area TOC-B is not present in the Multi Channel Area, or if the Multi Channel Area is not present, the value of MC\_TOC\_B\_Length must be zero.



## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### **3.1.1.6.7 E\_TOC\_Address**

E\_TOC\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of the Extension\_TOC. If the Extension Area is not present, the value of E\_TOC\_Address must be zero.

#### **3.1.1.6.8 E\_TOC\_Length**

E\_TOC\_Length is a 2 byte integer containing the length in Sectors of the Extension\_TOC, see chapter 6.1. If the Extension Area is not present, the value of E\_TOC\_Length must be zero.

#### **3.1.1.6.9 E\_Data\_Start\_Address**

E\_Data\_Start\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of Extension\_Data. If the Extension Area is not present, the value of E\_Data\_Start\_Address must be zero.

#### **3.1.1.6.10 E\_Data\_End\_Address**

E\_Data\_End\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the last Sector of the Extension\_Data. If the Extension Area is not present, the value of E\_Data\_End\_Address must be zero.

#### **3.1.1.6.11 EKB1\_Area\_Address**

EKB1\_Area\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of the EKB1 Area. In discs according to this version of the Super Audio CD Specification the value of EKB1\_Area\_Address must be 448.

A value of zero for EKB1\_Area\_Address means the EKB1 Area is not present, the EKB1 Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

#### **3.1.1.6.12 EKB2\_Area\_Address**

EKB2\_Area\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of the EKB2 Area. A value of zero for EKB2\_Area\_Address means the EKB2 Area is not present, the EKB2 Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

#### **3.1.1.6.13 Rev\_Area\_Start\_Address**

Rev\_Area\_Start\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the first Sector of the Revocation Data Area. If the Revocation Data Area is not present, the value of Rev\_Area\_Start\_Address must be zero. The Revocation Data Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

#### **3.1.1.6.14 Rev\_Area\_End\_Address**

Rev\_Area\_End\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the LSN of the last Sector of the Revocation Data Area. If the Revocation Data Area is not present, the value of Rev\_Area\_End\_Address must be zero. The Revocation Data Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.

### 3.1.2 Master\_Text

Master\_Text[c] contains all general text information that is related with the Album and with the Disc, for Text Channel c. Every Text Channel has an associated Master Text structure. The syntax of Master\_Text is defined in Figure 3-9. The size of Master\_Text is one Sector. For all Master\_Text[c] with c>N\_Text\_Channels (see chapter 3.1.1.4 and chapter 1.7.2.8), all fields of Master\_Text[c], except Master\_Text\_Signature, must be set to zero.

	# bytes	format	value
Master_Text() [c] {			
Master_Text_Signature	8	String	"SACDText "
Reserved	8	UInt8	0
Album_Title_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Artist_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Publisher_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Copyright_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Title_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Artist_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Publisher_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Album_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Title_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Artist_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Publisher_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Copyright_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Title_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Artist_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Publisher_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Disc_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr	2	UInt16	
Reserved	16	UInt8	0
if (Album_Title_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Title		Special_String }	
if (Album_Artist_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Artist		Special_String }	
if (Album_Publisher_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Publisher		Special_String }	
if (Album_Copyright_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Copyright		Special_String }	
if (Album_Title_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Title_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Album_Artist_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Artist_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Album_Publisher_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Publisher_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Album_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Album_Copyright_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Title_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Title		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Artist_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Artist		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Publisher_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Publisher		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Copyright_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Copyright		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Title_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Title_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Artist_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Artist_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Publisher_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Publisher_Phonetic		Special_String }	
if (Disc_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr!=0)			
{ Disc_Copyright_Phonetic		Special_String }	
Reserved	Until 2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-9 : Syntax of Master\_Text**

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

It is recommended that all discs in one Album contain the same Album related text. If Album\_Set\_Size (see chapter 3.1.1.2.1) is equal to one, it is recommended that the Album related text is equal to the Disc related text.

### 3.1.2.1 Master\_Text\_Signature

Master Text Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the text Sectors of the Master TOC. The value of Master\_Text\_Signature must be "SACDText" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$54 \$65 \$78 \$74). All eight Master\_Text Sectors must have a Master\_Text\_Signature.

### 3.1.2.2 Album\_Title\_Ptr

Album\_Title\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Title. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Title. If Album\_Title is not used, the Album\_Title field is not present and Album\_Title\_Ptr must be set to zero. If Album\_Title is used, the Album\_Title field is present and Album\_Title\_Ptr must have the value 64.

### 3.1.2.3 Album\_Artist\_Ptr

Album\_Artist\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Artist. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Artist. If Album\_Artist is not used, the Album\_Artist field is not present and Album\_Artist\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.1.2.4 Album\_Publisher\_Ptr

Album\_Publisher\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Publisher. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Publisher. If Album\_Publisher is not used, the Album\_Publisher field is not present and Album\_Publisher\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.1.2.5 Album\_Copyright\_Ptr

Album\_Copyright\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Copyright. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Copyright. If Album\_Copyright is not used, the Album\_Copyright field is not present and Album\_Copyright\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.1.2.6 Album\_Title\_Phonetic\_Ptr

Album\_Title\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Title\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Title\_Phonetic. If Album\_Title\_Phonetic is not used, the Album\_Title\_Phonetic field is not present and Album\_Title\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.1.2.7 Album\_Artist\_Phonetic\_Ptr

Album\_Artist\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Artist\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Artist\_Phonetic. If Album\_Artist\_Phonetic is not used, the Album\_Artist\_Phonetic field is not present and Album\_Artist\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.1.2.8 Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic\_Ptr

Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic. If Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic is not used, the Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic field is not present and Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.1.2.9 Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr

Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic. If Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic is not used, the Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic field is not present and Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.10 Disc\_Title\_Ptr**

Disc\_Title\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Title. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Title. If Disc\_Title is not used, the Disc\_Title field is not present and Disc\_Title\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.11 Disc\_Artist\_Ptr**

Disc\_Artist\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Artist. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Artist. If Disc\_Artist is not used, the Disc\_Artist field is not present and Disc\_Artist\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.12 Disc\_Publisher\_Ptr**

Disc\_Publisher\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Publisher. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Publisher. If Disc\_Publisher is not used, the Disc\_Publisher field is not present and Disc\_Publisher\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.13 Disc\_Copyright\_Ptr**

Disc\_Copyright\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Copyright. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Copyright. If Disc\_Copyright is not used, the Disc\_Copyright field is not present and Disc\_Copyright\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.14 Disc\_Title\_Phonetic\_Ptr**

Disc\_Title\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Title\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Title\_Phonetic. If Disc\_Title\_Phonetic is not used, the Disc\_Title\_Phonetic field is not present and Disc\_Title\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.15 Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic\_Ptr**

Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic. If Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic is not used, the Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic field is not present and Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.16 Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic\_Ptr**

Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic. If Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic is not used, the Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic field is not present and Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.17 Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr**

Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr contains a pointer to Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic. The pointer value is the byte position in the Sector of the first character of Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic. If Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic is not used, the Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic field is not present and Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### **3.1.2.18 Album\_Title**

If present, Album\_Title is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Title contains text with the album title. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

#### **3.1.2.19 Album\_Artist**

If present, Album\_Artist is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Artist contains text with the name of the main artist(s) for the album. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 3.1.2.20 Album\_Publisher

If present, Album\_Publisher is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Publisher contains text with the name of the album publisher. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.21 Album\_Copyright

If present, Album\_Copyright is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Copyright contains text with copyright information on the album. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.22 Album\_Title\_Phonetic

If present, Album\_Title\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Title\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with the album title. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.23 Album\_Artist\_Phonetic

If present, Album\_Artist\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Artist\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with the name of the main artist(s) for the album. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.24 Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic

If present, Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Publisher\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with the name of the album publisher. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.25 Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic

If present, Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Album\_Copyright\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with copyright information on the album. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.26 Disc\_Title

If present, Disc\_Title is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Title contains text with the disc title. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.27 Disc\_Artist

If present, Disc\_Artist is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Artist contains text with the name of the main artist(s) for the disc. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.28 Disc\_Publisher

If present, Disc\_Publisher is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Publisher contains text with the name of the disc publisher. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.29 Disc\_Copyright

If present, Disc\_Copyright is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Copyright contains text with copyright information on the disc. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.1.2.30 Disc\_Title\_Phonetic

If present, Disc\_Title\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Title\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with the disc title. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### **3.1.2.31 Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic**

If present, Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Artist\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with the name of the main artist(s) for the disc. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### **3.1.2.32 Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic**

If present, Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Publisher\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with the name of the disc publisher. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### **3.1.2.33 Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic**

If present, Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic is a variable length string coded with the character set specified by Character\_Set\_Code[c]. Disc\_Copyright\_Phonetic contains phonetic text with copyright information on the disc. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

## **3.1.3 Manuf\_Info**

Manuf\_Info can contain information stored by the disc manufacturer. The syntax of Manuf\_Info is defined in Figure 3-10.

	# bytes	format	value
Manuf_Info() {			
Manuf_Info_Signature	8	String	"SACD_Man"
Information()	2040		
}			

**Figure 3-10 : Syntax of Manuf\_Info**

### **3.1.3.1 Manuf\_Info\_Signature**

Manuf\_Info\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the Sector with the manufacturer information in the Master TOC. The value of Manuf\_Info\_Signature must be "SACD\_Man" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$5F \$4D \$61 \$6E).

### **3.1.3.2 Information**

The content and the format of the data in the Information field is decided by the disc manufacturer. If manufacturer information is not stored in this Sector, all bytes in the Information field must be set to zero.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2 Area TOC

Two versions of the Area TOC exist, one version (Area TOC-A) is stored in Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2, the other version (Area TOC-B) is stored in Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4. Area TOC-A is mandatory and Area TOC-B is optional. Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-3 are stored at the start of an Audio Area. Area TOC-2 and Area TOC-4 are stored at the end of an Audio Area.

The start location of each Area TOC is given in the Master TOC (see chapters 3.1.1.3 and 3.1.1.6). The Area TOC contains information on the Tracks in the Track Area.

The content of Area TOC-A is according to Super Audio CD Part 2 Version 1.3. In addition to the content of Area TOC-A, Area TOC-B can contain information on play list, bonus tracks, text and pictures. Whenever Area TOC-B is equal to Area TOC-A, Area TOC-B can be omitted from the disc.

In this chapter 3.2, the Area TOC data refers to the Tracks in Track Area-A for Area TOC-A and to the Tracks in Track Area-B for Area TOC-B.

The syntax of Area TOC is defined in Figure 3-11.

	# bytes	# Sectors	format	Mandatory/ Optional
Area_TOC() {				
Area_TOC_0()	2048	1	Area_TOC_0	M
Track_List_1()	2048	1	Track_List_1	M
Track_List_2()	2048	1	Track_List_2	M
ISRC_and_Genre_List()	2*2048	2	ISRC_and_Genre_List	M
Access_List()	0 or 32*2048	0, 32	Access_List	-/M
Track_Text()	q*2048	<= 32	Track_Text	O
Index_List()	r*2048	<= 10	Index_List	O
Track_WebLink_List()	s*2048	<= 4	Track_WebLink_List	O
Track_List_3()	0 or 8*2048	0, 8	Track_List_3	O
Set_Of_PlayLists()	u*2048	<= 5	Set_Of_PlayLists	O
}				

**Figure 3-11 : Syntax of Area TOC**

If the Audio Area is DST coded, the Access\_List must be present. If the Audio Area is Plain DSD coded, the Access\_List is not present. Access\_List occupies zero or 32 Sectors, the value of p (see chapter 2.2.6.1) is equal to zero or 32.

The fields Track\_Text, Index\_List and Track\_WebLink\_List are optional. The fields Track\_List\_3 and Set\_Of\_PlayLists are not present in Area TOC-A. The fields Track\_List\_3 and Set\_Of\_PlayLists are optional in Area TOC-B. The presence of Track\_Text, Index\_List, Track\_WebLink\_List, Track\_List\_3 and Set\_Of\_PlayLists is indicated in the List\_Pointers field of Area\_TOC\_0.

Track\_Text occupies maximum 32 Sectors ( $q \leq 32$ ). Index\_List occupies maximum 10 Sectors ( $r \leq 10$ ). Track\_WebLink\_List occupies maximum 4 Sectors ( $s \leq 4$ ). Track\_List\_3 occupies zero or 8 Sectors ( $t = 0$  or  $t = 8$ ). Set\_Of\_PlayLists occupies maximum 5 Sectors ( $u \leq 5$ ).

The maximum size of Area TOC-A is 79 Sectors. The maximum size of Area TOC-B is 96 Sectors. In future versions of Super Audio CD Part 2 additional lists can be defined, which can increase the maximum size of Area TOC-B.

Super Audio CD Part 3 can define additional Lists at the end of the Area\_TOC.

Track\_List\_1 contains access information. Track\_List\_2 contains Time Code information and Track attributes. Track\_List\_3 contains CCI as well as text and pictures related information.

Note that Area TOC-B is not present on Super Audio CD version 1.3 or lower discs and that Area TOC-B is conditionally present on version 2.0 or higher discs.

### 3.2.1 Area\_TOC\_0

The syntax of Area\_TOC\_0 is defined in Figure 3-12.

	# bytes	format	value
Area_TOC_0() {			
A_TOC_0_Header()	16	A_TOC_0_Header	
Area_Data()	112	Area_Data	
List_Pointers()	16	List_Pointers	
Area_Text()	1904	Area_Text	
}			

**Figure 3-12 : Syntax of Area\_TOC\_0**

#### 3.2.1.1 A\_TOC\_0\_Header

The syntax of A\_TOC\_0\_Header is defined in Figure 3-13.

	# bytes	format	value
A_TOC_0_Header() {			
Area_TOC_Signature	8	String	"TWOCHTOC" or "MULCHTOC"
Spec_Version	2	Spec_Version	
Area_TOC_Length	2	Uint16	5..
Reserved	4	Uint8	0
}			

**Figure 3-13 : Syntax of A\_TOC\_0\_Header**

##### 3.2.1.1.1 Area\_TOC\_Signature

Area\_TOC\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of the Area TOC. For the Area TOC in the 2-Channel Stereo Area, the value of Area\_TOC\_Signature must be "TWOCHTOC" (\$54 \$57 \$4F \$43 \$48 \$54 \$4F \$43). For the Area TOC in the Multi Channel Area, the value of Area\_TOC\_Signature must be "MULCHTOC" (\$4D \$55 \$4C \$43 \$48 \$54 \$4F \$43).

##### 3.2.1.1.2 Spec\_Version

Spec\_Version must contain the Spec\_Version as is defined in chapter 1.7.2.4.

##### 3.2.1.1.3 Area\_TOC\_Length

Area\_TOC\_Length contains the length of the Area\_TOC in Sectors.

Note: In case additional Lists are defined in Super Audio CD Part 3, these Lists are part of the Area\_TOC and therefore their lengths must be included in Area\_TOC\_Length.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.1.2 Area\_Data

The syntax of Area\_Data is defined in Figure 3-14.

	# bytes	format	value
Area_Data() {			
Max_Byte_Rate	4	UInt32	
FS_Code	1	FS_Code	4
Area_Flags	1	Area_Flags	
Reserved	10	UInt8	0
N_Channels	1	UInt8	2,5,6
Area_Config	1	Area_Config	
Max_Available_Channels	1	UInt8	0..6
Area_Mute_Flags	1	Area_Mute_Flags	
Reserved	12	UInt8	0
Area_Copy_Management	1	Area_Copy_Management	
Reserved	15	UInt8	0
Total_Area_Play_Time	3	Time_Code	
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
Track_Offset	1	UInt8	0..255
N_Tracks	1	UInt8	1..255
First_Bonus_Track_Number	1	UInt8	
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
Track_Area_Start_Address	4	UInt32	
Track_Area_End_Address	4	UInt32	
Text_Channels()	40	Text_Channels	
Reserved	until 128	UInt8	0
}			

Figure 3-14 : Syntax of Area\_Data

#### 3.2.1.2.1 Max\_Byte\_Rate

Max\_Byte\_Rate contains the highest Average Byte Rate of the Multiplexed Frames (see chapter 5) as used in this Track Area. The Average Byte Rate must be calculated over 15 Multiplexed Frames. The highest value for Average Byte Rate in the Track Area must be encoded in Max\_Byte\_Rate. The value of Max\_Byte\_Rate is expressed in bytes per second.

If the Frame\_Format (see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1) is equal to 0, the Average Byte Rate must be calculated in the following way:

$$\text{Average Byte Rate} = 2048 \times \frac{75}{15} \times (\text{Start\_Address} (n+15) - \text{Start\_Address} (n))$$

Where: n is a Frame number between 0 and (Total\_Area\_Play\_Time - 15 - 1).

Start\_Address(n) is the LSN of the Sector that contains the first byte of Multiplexed Frame n.

If the Frame\_Format is equal to 0 and N\_Channels is equal to 2, the maximum allowed value of Max\_Byte\_Rate is 839680. If the Frame\_Format is equal to 0 and N\_Channels is equal to 5 or 6, the maximum allowed value of Max\_Byte\_Rate is 1873920.

If the Frame\_Format is equal to 2, the value of Max\_Byte\_Rate must be 716800. If the Frame\_Format is equal to 3, the value of Max\_Byte\_Rate must be 819200.

### 3.2.1.2.2 FS\_Code

The FS\_Code field contains a code for the sampling frequency used for the current Audio Area. The definition of FS\_Code is given in Figure 3-15.

FS_Code	Sample_Frequency
0..3	Reserved for future use
4	64 * 44100 Hz
5..255	Reserved for future use

**Figure 3-15 : Definition of FS\_Code**

### 3.2.1.2.3 Area\_Flags

The format of Area\_Flags field is defined Figure 3-16.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Reserved = 0				Frame Format			

**Figure 3-16 : Format of Area\_Flags**

#### 3.2.1.2.3.1 Frame\_Format

Frame\_Format defines the Frame structure used by the multiplexed audio signal, see chapter 5. The value of Frame\_Format is defined in Figure 3-17.

Value	Meaning
0	DST coded. Flexible format, see chapter 5
1	Reserved
2	Fixed format. 2-Channel Stereo, Plain DSD, 3 Frames in 14 Sectors. See chapter 5
3	Fixed format. 2-Channel Stereo, Plain DSD, 3 Frames in 16 Sectors. See chapter 5
4..15	Reserved for future use

**Figure 3-17 : Definition of Frame\_Format**

### 3.2.1.2.4 N\_Channels

N\_Channels contains the number of audio channels that are encoded in each Frame of the current Audio Area. N\_Channels is equal to the maximum number of Audio Channels that are available in the current Audio Area. For the 2-Channel Stereo Area the value of N\_Channels must be set to 2. For the Multi Channel Area the allowed values of N\_Channels are 5 and 6.

The relation between N\_Channels and the Audio Channel number is defined in chapters 3.2.1.2.4.1 to 3.2.1.2.4.3. Except for the LFE Channel, the Channel Mapping defined in chapters 3.2.1.2.4.1 to 3.2.1.2.4.3 refers to the loudspeaker positions as defined in ITU-R BS.775-1.

For the Audio Channel Numbers used in this chapter, see Channel\_Nr in chapters 5.6.3.1 and 5.6.3.2.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 3.2.1.2.4.1 Channel Mapping for a 2-Channel Stereo Area (N\_Channels=2)

If N\_Channels is equal to 2, the Channel Mapping is defined in Figure 3-18.

Audio Channel Number	Channel Mapping
1	Left
2	Right

Figure 3-18 : Definition of Channel Mapping for N\_Channels = 2

#### 3.2.1.2.4.2 Channel Mapping for a Multi Channel Area (N\_Channels=5)

If N\_Channels is equal to 5, the Channel Mapping is defined in Figure 3-19.

Audio Channel Number	Channel Mapping
1	Left
2	Right
3	Center
4	Left Surround
5	Right Surround

Figure 3-19 : Definition of Channel Mapping for N\_Channels = 5

#### 3.2.1.2.4.3 Channel Mapping for a Multi Channel Area (N\_Channels=6)

If N\_Channels is equal to 6, the Channel Mapping is defined in Figure 3-20.

Audio Channel Number	Channel Mapping
1	Left
2	Right
3	Center
4	LFE
5	Left Surround
6	Right Surround

Figure 3-20 : Definition of Channel Mapping for N\_Channels = 6

**Note:** All Audio Channels, including LFE, are always full bandwidth and have equal audio gain.

#### 3.2.1.2.5 Area\_Config

The definition of Area\_Config is given in Figure 3-21.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Extra_Setting				Loudspeaker_Config			

Figure 3-21 : Definition of Area\_Config

### 3.2.1.2.5.1 Extra\_Setting

If N\_Channels = 6, Extra\_Setting defines the usage of Audio Channel 4 for the current Audio Area. If N\_Channels = 2 or N\_Channels = 5, the value of Extra\_Setting must be zero. If N\_Channels = 6, the definition of Extra\_Setting is given in Figure 3-22.

Value	Meaning
0	Audio Channel 4 is used for a LFE loudspeaker
1..7	Reserved for future use

**Figure 3-22 : Definition of Extra\_Setting**

Audio Channel 4 should contain an audio signal that is compatible with a LFE loudspeaker system.

### 3.2.1.2.5.2 Loudspeaker\_Config

Loudspeaker\_Config gives the global loudspeaker set-up for this Area as used for the recording. The definition of Loudspeaker\_Config is given in Figure 3-23.

Value	Meaning
0	2-Channel Stereo set-up
1..2	Reserved for future use
3	5-Channels, set-up according to ITU-R BS.775
4	6-Channels. 5-Channel set-up according to ITU-R BS.775, plus additional Low Frequency Enhancement (LFE) loudspeaker. Also known as "5.1 channel".
5..31	Reserved for future use

**Figure 3-23 : Definition of Loudspeaker\_Config**

The value 0 for Loudspeaker\_Config is only allowed if N\_Channels (see chapter 3.2.1.2.4) is equal to 2. The value 3 of Loudspeaker\_Config is only allowed if N\_Channels is equal to 5. The value 4 of Loudspeaker\_Config is only allowed if N\_Channels is equal to 6.

### 3.2.1.2.6 Max\_Available\_Channels

Max\_Available\_Channels encodes the maximum number of Audio Channels available per Track of the current Track Area. The minimum value of Max\_Available\_Channels is zero, the maximum value of Max\_Available\_Channels is 6. If Max\_Available\_Channels is equal to zero, the number of Audio Channels available in the current Track Area is equal to the value of N\_Channels. If Max\_Available\_Channels is in the range of 1..6, the number of Audio Channels available in the current Track Area is equal to the value of Max\_Available\_Channels.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.1.2.7 Area\_Mute\_Flags

Area\_Mute\_Flags indicate which Audio Channels are not available in the current Track Area. If an Audio Channel is not available for a Track, this Audio Channel must contain a Silence Pattern during the whole Track. If an Audio Channel is not available in the current Track Area, this Audio Channel must contain a Silence Pattern during all Tracks. The format of the Area\_Mute\_Flags field is defined Figure 3-24.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Reserved	AMF4	AMF3	AMF2	AMF1	Reserved		

Figure 3-24 : Format of Area\_Mute\_Flags

AMF1 must be set to one if TMF1[tno] (see 3.2.3.5.2) is set to one for all Tracks in the current Track Area, in all other cases AMF1 must be set to zero. AMF2 must be set to one if TMF2[tno] is set to one for all Tracks in the current Track Area, in all other cases AMF2 must be set to zero. AMF3 must be set to one if TMF3[tno] is set to one for all Tracks in the current Track Area, in all other cases AMF3 must be set to zero. AMF4 must be set to one if TMF4[tno] is set to one for all Tracks in the current Track Area, in all other cases AMF4 must be set to zero.

The values of AMF1 .. AMF4 can be calculated in the following way:

```
AMF1=1; AMF2=1; AMF3=1; AMF4=1;
For (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)
{
    AMF1 = AMF1 & TMF1[tno];
    AMF2 = AMF2 & TMF2[tno];
    AMF3 = AMF3 & TMF3[tno];
    AMF4 = AMF4 & TMF4[tno];
}
```

For the relation between TMFk and Audio Channel Numbers, see Figure 3-34.

**Note:** If N\_Channels is equal to 2, both AMF1, AMF2, AMF3 and AMF4 must be zero. If N\_Channels is equal to 5, AMF4 must be zero.

### 3.2.1.2.8 Area\_Copy\_Management

The format of Area\_Copy\_Management is defined in Figure 3-25.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Reserved				Track Attribute			

Figure 3-25 : Format of Area\_Copy\_Management

#### 3.2.1.2.8.1 Track\_Attribute

For the definition of Track\_Attribute see Super Audio CD Part 3-General chapter 3.1.

#### 3.2.1.2.9 Total\_Area\_Play\_Time

Total\_Area\_Play\_Time contains the total playing time of the current Track Area. The definition of Time\_Code is given in chapter 1.7.2.9. The maximum value of Total\_Area\_Play\_Time is 255:59:74. The values of Total\_Area\_Play\_Time in Area TOC-A and in Area TOC-B must fulfil the following requirement:

(Total\_Area\_Play\_Time in Area TOC-A) >= 0.8 \* roundup(Total\_Area\_Play\_Time in Area TOC-B)

**Note:** Total\_Area\_Play\_Time = Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[N\_Tracks] + Track\_Time\_Length[N\_Tracks].  
The Total\_Area\_Play\_Time is equal to the last encoded Time\_Code in the Track\_Area plus one Frame.

### 3.2.1.2.10 Track\_Offset

Track\_Offset contains the Track Number offset for all Tracks in the current Track Area, for display purposes. The Display Track Number is obtained if the Track\_Offset is added to the Track Number as given in Track\_List\_1 and Track\_List\_2. The first disc from an Album (Album\_Sequence\_Number = 1, see chapter 3.1.1.2.2) must have a Track\_Offset equal to zero. The Display Track Number = Physical Track Number + Track\_Offset. The maximum value of Display Track Number is 510. An example for the use of Track\_Offset is given in Figure 3-26.

Album_Sequence _Number	N_Tracks	Track_Offset	Track Number	Display Track Number
1	5	0	1	1
			2	2
			3	3
			4	4
			5	5
2	7	5	1	6
			2	7
			3	8
			4	9
			5	10
			6	11
			7	12
3	3	12	1	13
			2	14
			3	15

**Figure 3-26 : Example of the use of Track\_Offset**

### 3.2.1.2.11 N\_Tracks

N\_Tracks contains the value of the number of Tracks in the current Track Area. The minimum allowed value for N\_Tracks is 1. The maximum allowed value for N\_Tracks is 255.

Note: In Area TOC-A the value of N\_Tracks excludes the Bonus Tracks, see chapter 2.2.6.2.

### 3.2.1.2.12 First\_Bonus\_Track\_Number

First\_Bonus\_Track\_Number must contain the Track Number of the first Bonus Track in the current Track Area. If no Bonus Tracks are present in the current Track Area, First\_Bonus\_Track\_Number must be equal to zero.

Notes: In Area TOC-A, First\_Bonus\_Track\_Number must be equal to zero.

The Bonus Tracks occupy maximum 20% of an Audio Area, see chapter 3.2.1.2.9.

### 3.2.1.2.13 Track\_Area\_Start\_Address

Track\_Area\_Start\_Address must contain the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector in the Track Area (see chapter 2.2.6.2). The Sector addressed by Track\_Area\_Start\_Address must contain the Audio\_Frame with the Time\_Code 0:0:0.

### 3.2.1.2.14 Track\_Area\_End\_Address

Track\_Area\_End\_Address must contain the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the last Sector in the Track Area (see chapter 2.2.6.2).

**Note:**  $\text{Track\_Area\_End\_Address} = \text{Track\_Start\_Address}[\text{N\_Tracks}] + \text{Track\_Length}[\text{N\_Tracks}] - 1$

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.1.2.15 Text\_Channels

Text\_Channels contains the definition of the Text Channels used in the Area TOC of the current Track Area. All text in Area\_Text (see chapter 3.2.1.4) and Track\_Text (see chapter 3.2.6) must be according to the definitions in Text\_Channels. For the definition of Text\_Channels, see chapter 1.7.2.8. It is recommended that the contents of Text\_Channels is the same for Area TOC-A and Area TOC-B.

### 3.2.1.3 List\_Pointers

List\_Pointers contains pointers to various lists in the current Area TOC. The value of a pointer gives the Sector offset, from the first Sector of the Area\_TOC, to the first Sector of a list. If an offset value is set to zero, the corresponding list is not present. The syntax of List\_Pointers is defined Figure 3-27.

	# bytes	format	value
List_Pointers() {			
Track_Text_Ptr	2	Uint16	0, 5, 37
Index_List_Ptr	2	Uint16	
Access_List_Ptr	2	Uint16	0, 5
Track_WebLink_List_Ptr	2	Uint16	
Track_List_3_Ptr	2	Uint16	
Set_Of_PlayLists_Ptr	2	Uint16	
Reserved	4	Uint8	0
}			

**Figure 3-27 : Syntax of List\_Pointers**

Super Audio CD Part 3 can define additional pointers in the Reserved field of List\_Pointers.

Note that the order of Track\_Text, Index\_List and Access\_List in the Area TOC (see chapter 3.2) is different from the order of the corresponding pointers in List\_Pointers.

#### 3.2.1.3.1 Track\_Text\_Ptr

Track\_Text\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the Sector position of Track\_Text. The value Track\_Text\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the current Area\_TOC to the first Sector of Track\_Text. If the Track\_Text is not present, Track\_Text\_Ptr must be set to zero. If N\_Text\_Channels (see chapter 3.2.1.2.15 and chapter 1.7.2.8) is zero, Track\_Text is not present, and therefore Track\_Text\_Ptr must be set to zero. For the current version of the Super Audio CD Specification, the allowed values for Track\_Text\_Ptr are 0, 5 and 37.

#### 3.2.1.3.2 Index\_List\_Ptr

Index\_List\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the Sector position of Index\_List. The value of Index\_List\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the current Area\_TOC to the first Sector of Index\_List. The Index\_List is only present if the Track Area contains minimum one Track with two or more Indexes. If the Index\_List is not present, Index\_List\_Ptr must be set to zero.

#### 3.2.1.3.3 Access\_List\_Ptr

Access\_List\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the Sector position of Access\_List. The value of Access\_List\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the current Area\_TOC to the first Sector of Access\_List. The Access\_List must be present if the Audio Area is DST coded. If the current Audio Area is Plain DSD, the Access\_List is not allowed to be present. If the Access\_List is not present, Access\_List\_Ptr must be set to zero. For the current version of the Super Audio CD Specification, the allowed values for Access\_List\_Ptr are 0 and 5.

#### 3.2.1.3.4 Track\_WebLink\_List\_Ptr

Track\_WebLink\_List\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the Sector position of Track\_WebLink\_List. The value of Track\_WebLink\_List\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the current Area\_TOC to the first Sector of Track\_WebLink\_List. The Track\_WebLink\_List is only present if the Track Area contains minimum one Track with a WebLink. If the Track\_WebLink\_List is not present, Track\_WebLink\_List\_Ptr must be set to zero.

### 3.2.1.3.5 Track\_List\_3\_Ptr

Track\_List\_3\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the Sector position of Track\_List\_3. The value of Track\_List\_3\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the current Area\_TOC to the first Sector of Track\_List\_3. If the Track\_List\_3 is not present, Track\_List\_3\_Ptr must be set to zero. For Area TOC-A, Track\_List\_3\_Ptr must be equal to zero.

### 3.2.1.3.6 Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Ptr

Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the Sector position of Set\_Of\_PlayLists. The value of Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the current Area\_TOC to the first Sector of Set\_Of\_PlayLists. Set\_Of\_PlayLists only is present if there is minimally one PlayList for the Track\_Area, see chapter 3.2.10. If Set\_Of\_PlayLists is not present, Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Ptr must be set to zero. For Area TOC-A, Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Ptr must be equal to zero.

### 3.2.1.4 Area\_Text

Area\_TOC\_0 must always contain Area\_Text. Area\_Text can contain general text for the current Track Area. All unused fields in Area\_Text must be set to zero. The syntax of Area\_Text is defined in Figure 3-28.

	# bytes	format	value
Area_Text() {			
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
Area_Description_Ptr[c]	2	Uint16	
Area_Copyright_Ptr[c]	2	Uint16	
Area_Description_Phonetic_Ptr[c]	2	Uint16	
Area_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr[c]	2	Uint16	
}			
Reserved	until 208	Uint8	0
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
if (Area_Description_Ptr[c] != 0)			
{ Area_Description[c]		Special_String }	
if (Area_Copyright_Ptr[c] != 0)			
{ Area_Copyright[c]		Special_String }	
if (Area_Description_Phonetic_Ptr[c] != 0)			
{ Area_Description_Phonetic[c]		Special_String }	
if (Area_Copyright_Phonetic_Ptr[c] != 0)			
{ Area_Copyright_Phonetic[c]		Special_String }	
}			
Reserved	until 2048	Uint8	0
}			

**Figure 3-28 : Syntax of Area\_Text**

The value of N\_Text\_Channels is encoded in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15.

#### 3.2.1.4.1 Area\_Description\_Ptr

Area\_Description\_Ptr[c] contains the byte position for the first byte of Area\_Description for Text Channel c. If Area\_Description[c] is not used, Area\_Description[c] is not present and Area\_Description\_Ptr[c] must be set to zero.

#### 3.2.1.4.2 Area\_Copyright\_Ptr

Area\_Copyright\_Ptr[c] contains the byte position for the first byte of Area\_Copyright for Text Channel c. If Area\_Copyright[c] is not used, Area\_Copyright[c] is not present and Area\_Copyright\_Ptr[c] must be set to zero.

#### 3.2.1.4.3 Area\_Description\_Phonetic\_Ptr

Area\_Description\_Phonetic\_Ptr[c] contains the byte position for the first byte of Area\_Description\_Phonetic for Text Channel c. If Area\_Description\_Phonetic[c] is not used, Area\_Description\_Phonetic[c] is not present and Area\_Description\_Phonetic\_Ptr[c] must be set to zero.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 3.2.1.4.4 Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr

Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr[c] contains the byte position for the first byte of Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic for Text Channel c. If Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic[c] is not used, Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic[c] is not present and Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic\_Ptr[c] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.1.4.5 Area\_Description

Area\_Description[c] contains a description of the current Track Area in Text Channel c. The character set and language code for Text Channel c is defined in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.2.1.4.6 Area\_Copyright

Area\_Copyright[c] contains copyright information of the current Track Area in Text Channel c. The character set and language code for Text Channel c is defined in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.2.1.4.7 Area\_Description\_Phonetic

Area\_Description\_Phonetic[c] contains a phonetic description of the current Track Area in Text Channel c. The character set and language code for Text Channel c is defined in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

### 3.2.1.4.8 Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic

Area\_Copyright\_Phonetic[c] contains phonetic copyright information of the current Track Area in Text Channel c. The character set and language code for Text Channel c is defined in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15. The definition of Special\_String is given in chapter 1.7.2.6.

## 3.2.2 Track\_List\_1

Track\_List\_1 contains the start Sector address and length for all Tracks in the current Track Area. Track\_List\_1 must always be present in an Area TOC. The length of Track\_List\_1 is always one Sector. The syntax of Track\_List\_1 is defined in Figure 3-29.

	# bytes	format	value
Track_List_1(){			
Track_List_1_Signature	8	String	"SACDTRL1"
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Track_Start_Address[tno]	4	UInt32	
}			
Reserved	until 1028	UInt8	0
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Track_Length[tno]	4	UInt32	
}			
Reserved	until 2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-29 : Syntax of Track\_List\_1**

The value of N\_Tracks is encoded in Area\_Data of Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

### 3.2.2.1 Track\_List\_1\_Signature

Track\_List\_1\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the Sector with Track\_List\_1. The value of Track\_List\_1\_Signature must be "SACDTRL1" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$54 \$52 \$4C \$31).

### 3.2.2.2 Track\_Start\_Address

Track\_Start\_Address[tno] contains the Logical Sector Number (LSN) for the first Sector of Track[tno]. The first Sector of Track[tno] is the Sector that contains the first byte of the first Multiplexed Frame of that Track. The Track\_Start\_Address of a Track must be in the Track Area (see chapter 2.2.6.2).

**Note:** For  $1 \leq \text{tno} < N\_Tracks$  the following equation must be true:

$$\text{Track\_Start\_Address}[\text{tno}+1] \geq \text{Track\_Start\_Address}[\text{tno}] + \text{Track\_Length}[\text{tno}] - 1$$

### 3.2.2.3 Track\_Length

Track\_Length[tno] contains the length in Sectors of Track[tno]. A Track\_Length of zero is not allowed. The Last Sector of Track[tno] is the Sector that contains the last byte of the last Multiplexed Frame of that Track.

Track\_Length can be calculated by using the following formula:

$$\text{Track\_Length}[\text{tno}] = \text{LSN}(\text{Last Sector}[\text{tno}]) - \text{Track\_Start\_Address}[\text{tno}] + 1$$

Note that the sum of the Track\_Length of all Tracks in a Track Area does not have to be equal to the size of that Track Area. The reasons are:

- One Sector can be both the last Sector of a Track and the first Sector of the next Track.
- One or more Tracks can have a preceding Pause.

## 3.2.3 Track\_List\_2

Track\_List\_2 contains the start Time Code, Playing Time and Track Flags for all Tracks in the current Track Area. Track\_List\_2 must always be present in an Area TOC. The length of Track\_List\_2 is always one Sector. The syntax of Track\_List\_2 is defined in Figure 3-30.

	# bytes	format	value
Track_List_2(){			
Track_List_2_Signature	8	String	"SACDTRL2"
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Track_Start_Time_Code[tno]	3	Time_Code	
Track_Mode[tno]	1	Track_Mode	
}			
Reserved	until 1028	UInt8	0
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Track_Time_Length[tno]	3	Time_Code	
Track_Flags[tno]	1	Track_Flags	
}			
Reserved	until 2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-30 : Syntax of Track\_List\_2**

The value of N\_Tracks is encoded in Area\_Data of Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

### 3.2.3.1 Track\_List\_2\_Signature

Track\_List\_2\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the Sector with Track\_List\_2. The value of Track\_List\_2\_Signature must be "SACDTRL2" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$54 \$52 \$4C \$32).

### 3.2.3.2 Track\_Start\_Time\_Code

Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] gives the start Time Code of Track[tno]. The definition of Time\_Code is given in chapter 1.7.2.9. Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] must be encoded in the Audio\_Header of the Sector addressed by Track\_Start\_Address[tno].

**Note :** For  $1 \leq \text{tno} < N\_Tracks$  the following equation must be true:

$$\text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code}[\text{tno}+1] \geq \text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code}[\text{tno}] + \text{Track\_Time\_Length}[\text{tno}]$$

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 3.2.3.3 Track\_Mode

The format of Track\_Mode[tno] is defined in Figure 3-31.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Extra_Use				Reserved			

Figure 3-31 : Format of Track\_Mode

##### 3.2.3.3.1 Extra\_Use

If N\_Channels = 6, Extra\_Use[tno] defines the usage of Audio Channel 4. If N\_Channels = 2 or N\_Channels = 5, the value of Extra\_Use[tno] must be zero. If N\_Channels = 6, the definition of Extra\_Use[tno] is given in Figure 3-32.

Value	Meaning
0	Audio Channel 4 is used for a LFE loudspeaker
1..7	Reserved for future use

Figure 3-32 : Definition of Extra\_Use

#### 3.2.3.4 Track\_Time\_Length

Track\_Time\_Length[tno] contains the playing time of Track[tno]. The definition of Time\_Code is given in chapter 1.7.2.9. The minimum allowed value for Track\_Time\_Length is 1 second.

#### 3.2.3.5 Track\_Flags

The format of Track\_Flags[tno] is defined in Figure 3-33.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
ILP[tno]	TMF4[tno]	TMF3[tno]	TMF2[tno]	TMF1[tno]	Reserved		

Figure 3-33 : Format of Track\_Flags

##### 3.2.3.5.1 Index List Present (ILP)

ILP[tno] indicates whether for Track[tno] an Index\_List is present or not. If Index\_Ptr[tno] (see chapter 3.2.7.2) is not equal to zero, ILP[tno] must be set to one. If Index\_List is not present or Index\_Ptr[tno] is equal to zero, ILP[tno] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.3.5.2 TMF1, TMF2, TMF3, TMF4

The Track mute flags TMF1[tno] .. TMF4[tno] indicate which Audio Channels are not available for Track[tno].

If an Audio Channel is not available for a Track, this Audio Channel must contain a Silence Pattern during the whole Track. In case an Audio Channel is not available in a Track, it is not required to have a Silence Pattern at the start of that Track only if the same Audio Channel is available for the previous Track. In case an Audio Channel is not available in a Track, it is not required to have a Silence Pattern at the end of that Track only if the same Audio Channel is available for the next Track.

If contents is available for an Audio Channel, the audio contents of this Audio Channel is not restricted.

If N\_Channels is equal to 2, TMF1[tno], TMF2[tno], TMF3[tno] and TMF4[tno] all must be set to zero.

TMF1[tno] set to one indicates that audio contents is not available in Audio Channels 1 and 2.

TMF2[tno] set to one indicates that audio contents is not available in Audio Channels 4 and 5 (if N\_Channels = 5) or in Audio Channels 5 and 6 (if N\_Channels = 6).

If N\_Channels is equal to 5 or 6, TMF3[tno] set to one indicates that audio contents is not available in Audio Channel 3.

If N\_Channels is equal to 6, TMF4[tno] set to one indicates that audio contents is not available in Audio Channel 4. If N\_Channels is equal to 5, TMF4[tno] must be set to zero.

Figure 3-34 gives an overview of the relation between N\_Channels and TMF1, TMF2, TMF3, TMF4.

Figure 3-35 gives an overview of the allowed combinations of TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4.

For the relation between Audio Channel Number and the loudspeaker position, see the Channel Mappings defined in chapter 3.2.1.2.4.

Field name   value		N_Channels = 6	N_Channels = 5	N_Channels = 2
TMF1	0	Channel 1 and Channel 2 are available	Channel 1 and Channel 2 are available	Channel 1 and Channel 2 are available
	1	Value not allowed	Value not allowed	Value not allowed
TMF3	0	Channel 3 is available	Channel 3 is available	Not used
	1	Channel 3 contains a Silence Pattern	Channel 3 contains a Silence Pattern	Value not allowed
TMF4	0	Channel 4 is available	Not used	Not used
	1	Channel 4 contains a Silence Pattern	Value not allowed	Value not allowed
TMF2	0	Channel 5 and Channel 6 are available	Channel 4 and Channel 5 are available	Not used
	1	Channel 5 and Channel 6 contain a Silence Pattern	Channel 4 and Channel 5 contain a Silence Pattern	Value not allowed

**Figure 3-34 : Relation between N\_Channels and TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4**

For the Multichannel Area the following restrictions shall apply:

- Channel 1 and Channel 2 are always available (TMF1 is always equal to zero)
- Minimally three Audio Channels are always available
- If N\_Channels is equal to 6 and TMF4[tno] is equal to zero, minimally four Audio Channels are always available.

**Note:** It is recommended that the jacket of the disc contains information on the actual Audio Channels used if minimally one of TMF2[tno], TMF3[tno] or TMF4[tno] is equal to 1.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

N_Channels	Available channels in Track [tno]	TMFx[tno]			
		4	3	2	1
6	Channel 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6	0	0	0	0
	Channel 1, 2, 3, 5, 6	1	0	0	0
	Channel 1, 2, 4, 5, 6	0	1	0	0
	Channel 1, 2, 5, 6	1	1	0	0
	Channel 1, 2, 3, 4	0	0	1	0
	Channel 1, 2, 3	1	0	1	0
5	Channel 1, 2, 3, 4, 5	0	0	0	0
	Channel 1, 2, 4, 5	0	1	0	0
	Channel 1, 2, 3	0	0	1	0
2	Channel 1, 2	0	0	0	0

**Figure 3-35 : Allowed combinations of TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4**

### 3.2.4 ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List

ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List must always be present in an Area TOC. The length of ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List is always two Sectors. The syntax of ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List is defined in Figure 3-36.

	# bytes	format	value
ISRC_and_Genre_List() {			
ISRC_and_Genre_Signature	8	String	"SACD_IGL"
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
ISRC() [tno]	12	ISRC	
}			
Reserved	until 3072	UInt8	0
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Genre[tno]	4	Genre_Code	
}			
Reserved	until 4096	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-36 : Syntax of ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List**

The value of N\_Tracks is encoded in Area\_Data of Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

#### 3.2.4.1 ISRC\_and\_Genre\_Signature

ISRC\_and\_Genre\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of ISRC\_and\_Genre\_List. The value of ISRC\_and\_Genre\_Signature must be "SACD\_IGL" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$5F \$49 \$47 \$4C).

#### 3.2.4.2 ISRC

It is recommended that ISRC[tno] contains the ISRC code for Track[tno]. If the ISRC code is not available for Track[tno], all fields in ISRC[tno] must be set to NUL characters (\$00). If the ISRC code is used for a Track, it must be used according to ISO 3901. The syntax of ISRC is defined in Figure 3-37.

	#bytes	format	value
ISRC() [tno] {			
Country_Code[tno]	2	String	
Owner_Code[tno]	3	String	
Recording_Year[tno]	2	String	
Designation_Code[tno]	5	String	
}			

**Figure 3-37 : Syntax of ISRC**

### 3.2.4.2.1 Country\_Code

Country\_Code[tno] must contain the ISO 646 coded Country code for Track[tno], see ISO 3901 section 4.1.

### 3.2.4.2.2 Owner\_Code

Owner\_Code[tno] must contain the ISO 646 coded First owner code for Track[tno], see ISO 3901 section 4.2.

### 3.2.4.2.3 Recording\_Year

Recording\_Year[tno] must contain the Year-of-recording code for Track[tno], see ISO 3901 section 4.3. Each digit is coded as one ISO 646 character.

### 3.2.4.2.4 Designation\_Code

Designation\_Code[tno] must contain the concatenation of Recording code and Recording-item code for Track[tno], see ISO 3901 sections 4.4 and 4.5. Each digit is coded as one ISO 646 character.

### 3.2.4.3 Genre

It is recommended that Genre[tno] contains the Genre Code for Track[tno]. If the Genre Code is not available for Track[tno], all fields in Genre[tno] must be set to zero. If the Genre Code is used for a Track, it must be used according to the definitions in chapter 1.7.2.2.

### 3.2.5 Access\_List

Access\_List contains a table with Start Addresses associated with Time Codes for a DST coded Track Area. Access\_List must be present if the Audio Area is DST coded. If the current Audio Area is Plain DSD, the Access\_List is not allowed to be present. The Start Address for a Time Code T, is the Logical Sector Number of the Sector that contains the first byte of Multiplexed Frame T. Access\_List has a fixed size of 65536 Bytes (32 Sectors). The syntax of Access\_List is defined in Figure 3-38.

	# bytes	format	value
Access_List() {			
Access_List_Signature	8	String	"SACD_ACC"
N_Entries	2	UInt16	1..6550
Main_Step_Size	1	UInt8	
Reserved	5	UInt8	0
Main_Acc_List()		Main_Acc_List	
Reserved	until 32768	UInt8	0
Detailed_Access()		Detailed_Access	
Reserved	until 65536	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-38 : Syntax of Access\_List**

#### 3.2.5.1 Access\_List\_Signature

Access\_List\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of Access\_List. The value of Access\_List\_Signature must be "SACD\_ACC" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$5F \$41 \$43 \$43).

#### 3.2.5.2 N\_Entries

N\_Entries contains the number of Entries in Main\_Acc\_List. The relation between N\_Entries, Total\_Area\_Play\_Time (see chapter 3.2.1.2) and Main\_Step\_Size is defined in the following formula:

$$N\_Entries = 1 + \text{trunc} \left( \frac{\text{Total\_Area\_Play\_Time} - 1}{\text{Main\_Step\_Size}} \right)$$

Where in this formula Total\_Area\_Play\_Time must be expressed in Frames. The maximum allowed value of N\_Entries is 6550.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.5.3 Main\_Step\_Size

The Track\_Area is divided into Intervals of Main\_Step\_Size Frames, with Interval[N] being the (N+1)<sup>th</sup> Interval in the Track Area. For every Main\_Step\_Size Frames, the Start Address of the Multiplexed Frame is encoded in Main\_Acc\_List. Main\_Step\_Size must be a multiple of 10. The minimum allowed value of Main\_Step\_Size is 10. The maximum allowed value of Main\_Step\_Size is 180.

### 3.2.5.4 Main\_Acc\_List

Main\_Acc\_List contains the Start Addresses of the Multiplexed Frames at intervals of Main\_Step\_Size Frames. For each encoded Start Address, Main\_Acc\_List contains either a correction factor to estimate the intermediate Start Addresses, or a pointer to a detailed access List (Detailed\_List). The syntax of Main\_Acc\_List is defined in Figure 3-39.

	# bytes	format	value
Main_Acc_List() {			
for (N=0; N<N_Entries; N++)			
{			
Access_Flags() [N]	2	Access_Flags	
Entry[N]	3	Uint24	
}			
}			

Figure 3-39 : Syntax of Main\_Acc\_List

#### 3.2.5.4.1 Access\_Flags

Access\_Flags[N] contains for Interval[N] either a pointer to a detailed Access List (Detailed\_List), or the Access\_Margin that is needed to estimate the Start Address for a given Time Code. The syntax of Access\_Flags is defined in Figure 3-40.

	# bits	format	value
Access_Flags() [N] {			
Detailed[N]	1	Uint1	
if (Detailed[N] == 1)			
{			
Detailed_List_Ptr[N]	15	Uint15	
}			
else			
{			
Access_Margin[N]	15	Uint15	
}			
}			

Figure 3-40 : Syntax of Access\_Flags

Note that the allocation of the fields in Access\_Flags is defined in bits and not in bytes.

##### 3.2.5.4.1.1 Detailed

If Detailed[N] is set to one, for Interval[N] a Detailed\_List is encoded in Detailed\_Access. If a Detailed\_List is encoded, the Start Address for a Time Code in Interval[N] can be estimated by using Detailed\_List[N]. If Detailed[N] is set to zero, in Interval[N] the Start Address is estimated by linear interpolation modified with Access\_Margin[N]. For the last Interval in a Track Area, Detailed[N] must be set to zero.

Note: Main\_Acc\_List can contain maximum 1213 Access\_Flags with Detailed[N] set to one.

##### 3.2.5.4.1.2 Detailed\_List\_Ptr

Detailed\_List\_Ptr[N] contains the byte position of Detailed\_List[N] within Detailed\_Access. The first Detailed\_List\_Ptr in Main\_Acc\_List must have the value zero.

### 3.2.5.4.1.3 Access\_Margin

Access\_Margin[N] contains a correction factor for the calculation of the estimated Start Address between Entry[N] and Entry[N+1]. The estimated Start Address for a given Time Code T, can be calculated with the following formulas:

$$\text{Estimated Start Address}[T] = \max(\text{Entry}[N], \text{Interp\_Address}[T] - \text{Access\_Margin}[N])$$

where:  $N = \text{trunc} \left( \frac{T}{\text{Main\_Step\_Size}} \right)$

T = The Time Code expressed in Frames.

$$\text{Interp\_Address}[T] = \text{Entry}[N] + \text{trunc} \left( \frac{(T \bmod \text{Main\_Step\_Size}) \times (\text{Entry}[N+1] - \text{Entry}[N])}{\text{Main\_Step\_Size}} \right)$$

Access\_Margin[N] must contain the largest value of (Interp\_Address[T] - Start\_Address[T]) for all frames in the Interval[N]. Where Start\_Address[T] is the Start Address of Multiplexed Frame T. For the last Interval of a Track Area, a different calculation method for Interp\_Address[T] is used:

$$\text{Interp\_Address}[T] = \text{Entry}[N_{\text{last}}] + \text{trunc} \left( \frac{(T \bmod \text{Main\_Step\_Size}) \times (\text{Track\_Area\_End\_Address} - \text{Entry}[N_{\text{last}}])}{1 + ((\text{Total\_Area\_Play\_Time} - 1) \bmod \text{Main\_Step\_Size})} \right)$$

where: Total\_Area\_Play\_Time is the total playing time of the Track Area expressed in Frames.

### 3.2.5.4.2 Entry

Entry[N] contains the Start Address of Multiplexed Frame[N \* Main\_Step\_Size].

### 3.2.5.5 Detailed\_Access

Detailed\_Access contains one Detailed\_List for each Entry[N] in Main\_Acc\_List with Detailed[N] set to one. If a Detailed\_List is encoded for Interval[N], the Start Address can be retrieved from Detailed\_List[N] for 9 Time Codes in Interval[N]. The syntax of Detailed\_Access is defined in Figure 3-41.

	# bytes	format	value
Detailed_Access() {			
for (N=0; N<N_Entries; N++)			
{			
if (Detailed[N] == 1)			
{			
Detailed_List() [N]	27	Detailed_List	
}			
}			
}			

**Figure 3-41 : Syntax of Detailed\_Access**

Note: Detailed\_Access can contain maximum 1213 Detailed\_List.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.5.5.1 Detailed\_List

Detailed\_List[N] contains the Start Address for 9 Frames between Entry[N] and Entry[N+1]. The syntax of Detailed\_List is defined in Figure 3-42.

	# bytes	format	value
Detailed_List() [N] {			
for (M=1; M<10; M++)			
{			
Sub_Entry[N] [M]	3	Uint24	
}			
}			

**Figure 3-42 : Syntax of Detailed\_List**

#### 3.2.5.5.1.1 Sub\_Entry

Sub\_Entry[N][M] contains the Start Address of Multiplexed Frame[N\*Main\_Step\_Size+M\*Main\_Step\_Size/10]. Sub\_Entry[N][0] is equal to Entry[N] and is not encoded in Detailed\_List[N].

### 3.2.6 Track\_Text

Track\_Text is only present if Track\_Text\_Ptr (see chapter 3.2.1.3) is not set to zero. Track\_Text contains text associated with the Tracks in the current Track Area. The length of Track\_Text is an integer number of Sectors. The maximum length of Track\_Text is 32 Sectors. The syntax of Track\_Text is defined in Figure 3-43.

	# bytes	format	value
Track_Text() {			
Track_Text_Signature	8	String	"SACDText"
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Track_Text_Item_Ptr[c] [tno]	2	Uint16	
}			
}			
Reserved	until 4096	Uint8	0
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
if (Track_Text_Item_Ptr[c] [tno] != 0)			
{			
N_Items[c] [tno]	1	Uint8	1..10
Reserved	3	Uint8	0
for (item=1; item<=N_Items[c] [tno]; item++)			
{			
Text_Item[c] [tno] [item]		TOC_Text	
}			
}			
}			
}			
Reserved	until eos	Uint8	0
}			

**Figure 3-43 : Syntax of Track\_Text**

The values of N\_Text\_Channels and N\_Tracks are encoded in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15.

If Track\_Text is present, it must contain minimally one Text\_Item.

#### 3.2.6.1 Track\_Text\_Signature

Track\_Text\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of Track\_Text. The value of Track\_Text\_Signature must be "SACDText" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$54 \$54 \$78 \$74).

### 3.2.6.2 Track\_Text\_Item\_Ptr

Track\_Text\_Item\_Ptr[c][tno] contains the byte offset from the first byte of Track\_Text to N\_Items[c][tno]. If no Text\_Item is available for the combination of Text Channel c and Track[tno], Track\_Text\_Item\_Ptr[c][tno] must be set to zero. If minimally one Text\_Item is available, the first non zero Track\_Text\_Item\_Ptr in Track\_Text must have the value 4096.

### 3.2.6.3 N\_Items

N\_Items[c][tno] contains the number of text items available for Track[tno] in Text Channel c. The minimum allowed value for N\_Items is one. The maximum allowed value for N\_Items is 10.

### 3.2.6.4 Text\_Item

Text\_Item[c][tno][item] contains a text item for Track[tno] in Text Channel c. The Character Set and Language Code for Text Channel c is defined in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15. The definition of TOC\_Text is given in chapter 1.7.2.10. Text\_Items must be stored in increasing order of Text\_Type, see chapter 1.7.2.10.1.

## 3.2.7 Index\_List

Index\_List is only allowed to be present if the Track Area contains minimum one Track with two or more Indexes. For all Tracks with Indexes above the value of one, Index\_List contains the start Time Code of Indexes 2 and higher. The maximum length of Index\_List is 10 Sectors. The syntax of Index\_List is defined in Figure 3-44.

	# bytes	format	value
Index_List() {			
Index_List_Signature	8	String	"SACD_Ind"
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Index_Ptr[tno]	2	Uint16	
}			
Reserved	until 524	Uint8	0
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
if (Index_Ptr[tno] > 0)			
{			
N_Stored_Indexes[tno]	1	Uint8	1..254
for (x=1; x<=N_Stored_Indexes[tno]; x++)			
{			
Index_Start_TC[tno][x+1]	3	Time_Code	
}			
}			
}			
Reserved	until eos	Uint8	0
}			

**Figure 3-44 : Syntax of Index\_List**

The value of N\_Tracks is encoded in Area\_Data of Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2. If Index\_List is present, it must contain minimally one Index\_Start\_TC.

### 3.2.7.1 Index\_List\_Signature

Index\_List\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of Index\_List. The value of Index\_List\_Signature must be "SACD\_Ind" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$5F \$49 \$6E \$64).

### 3.2.7.2 Index\_Ptr

Index\_Ptr[tno] contains the byte offset from the first byte of Index\_List to N\_Stored\_Indexes[tno]. If no Index\_Start\_TC[tno][ ] are stored for Track[tno], the value of Index\_Ptr[tno] must be zero. If Index\_List is present, the first non zero Index\_Ptr in Index\_List must have the value 524.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.7.3 N\_Stored\_Indexes

N\_Stored\_Indexes[tno] contains the number of Indexes that is stored in the Index\_List for Track[tno]. The minimum allowed value for N\_Stored\_Indexes is one. The maximum allowed value for N\_Stored\_Indexes is 254.

Note: N\_Stored\_Indexes is equal to the number of Indexes in a Track minus one.

### 3.2.7.4 Index\_Start\_TC

Index\_Start\_TC[tno][x+1] contains the start Time\_Code for Index x+1 in Track[tno]. The start Time\_Code is relative to the start of the Track Area, see chapter 2.2.6.2. The start position of Index[1] is equal to the start position of Track[tno], and is not stored in the Index\_List. The first stored Index\_Start\_TC points to the start of Index 2. The encoding of Time\_Code is defined in chapter 1.7.2.9.

### 3.2.8 Track\_WebLink\_List

Track\_WebLink\_List is only allowed to be present if the Track Area contains minimum one Track with a WebLink. The maximum length of Track\_WebLink\_List is 4 Sectors. The syntax of Track\_WebLink\_List is defined in Figure 3-45.

	# bytes	format	value
Track_WebLink_List() { Track_WebLink_List_Signature for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++) { Track_WL_Start_Ptr[tno] } Reserved for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++) { if (Track_WL_Start_Ptr[tno] != 0) { Track_WebLink[tno] } } Reserved }	8  2  until 524       until eos	String  Uint16  Uint8     WebLink_String  Uint8	"SACD_WLL"    0       0

Figure 3-45 : Syntax of Track\_WebLink\_List

The value of N\_Tracks is encoded in Area\_Data of Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

#### 3.2.8.1 Track\_WebLink\_List\_Signature

Track\_WebLink\_List\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of Track\_WebLink\_List. The value of Track\_WebLink\_List\_Signature must be "SACD\_WLL" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$5F \$57 \$4C \$4C).

#### 3.2.8.2 Track\_WL\_Start\_Ptr

Track\_WL\_Start\_Ptr[tno] contains the byte offset from the first byte of Track\_WebLink\_List to Track\_WebLink[tno]. If Track\_WebLink\_List is present, the first non zero Track\_WL\_Start\_Ptr in Track\_WebLink\_List must have the value 524. If Track\_WL\_Start\_Ptr[tno] is equal to zero, Track\_WebLink[tno] is not present.

#### 3.2.8.3 Track\_WebLink

Track\_WebLink[tno] contains a WebLink\_String that points to a web page containing information about Track[tno]. If Disc\_WebLink (see chapter 3.1.1.5.1) can not be used for Track[tno], Track\_WebLink can contain a WebLink\_String for Track[tno]. If Track\_WebLink[tno] is not present, Disc\_WebLink can be used for Track[tno].

### 3.2.9 Track\_List\_3

Track\_List\_3 contains information about the contents of the Supplementary Data Stream in the current Audio Area, in addition Track\_List\_3 contains CCI information. If, in the current Audio Area, the Supplementary Data Stream contains SD\_Units as specified in chapter 5.7.1.1, Track\_List\_3 must be present in Area TOC-B. Track\_List\_3 shall not be present in Area TOC-A. Note that Track\_List\_3 can be present even if Supplementary Data is not present. The length of Track\_List\_3 is 8 Sectors. The syntax of Track\_List\_3 is defined in Figure 3-46.

	# bytes	format	value
Track_List_3(){			
Track_List_3_Signature	8	String	"SACDTRL3"
SD_Info()	4088	SD_Info	
Audio_CCI()	4096	Audio_CCI	
SD_Slide_List()	8192	SD_Slide_List	
Reserved	until 4*4096	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-46 : Syntax of Track\_List\_3**

The value of N\_Tracks is encoded in Area\_Data of Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

#### 3.2.9.1 Track\_List\_3\_Signature

Track\_List\_3\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of Track\_List\_3. The value of Track\_List\_3\_Signature must be "SACDTRL3" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$54 \$52 \$4C \$33).

#### 3.2.9.2 SD\_Info

SD\_Info contains information about the Supplementary Data in the current Audio Area. The syntax of SD\_Info is defined in Figure 3-47.

	# bytes	format	value
SD_Info(){			
Area_Flags_2	1	Area_Flags_2	
Reserved	7	Reserved	0
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
PreLoad_Entry[tno]	7	PreLoad_Entry	
Track_Pic_Presence[tno]	1	Track_Pic_Presence	
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
Track_Txt_Sub_Presence[tno][c]	1	Track_Txt_Sub_Presence	
}			
Reserved	8-N_Text_Channels	UInt8	0
}			
Reserved	4080-16*N_Tracks	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-47 : Syntax of SD\_Info**

##### 3.2.9.2.1 Area\_Flags\_2

The format of Area\_Flags\_2 is defined in Figure 3-48.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Pic_Pr	Sub_Pr	Txt_Pr	Reserved				

**Figure 3-48 : Format of Area\_Flags\_2**

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.9.2.1.1 Pictures Present (Pic\_Pr)

Pic\_Pr indicates whether JPEG pictures are present or not in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, see chapter 5.7.1.1.1.2. If JPEG pictures are present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, Pic\_Pr must be set to one. If JPEG pictures are not present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, Pic\_Pr must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.1.2 Sub\_Pictures Present (Sub\_Pr)

Sub\_Pr indicates whether Sub\_Pictures are present or not in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, see chapter 5.7.1.1.1.3. If Sub\_Pictures are present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, Sub\_Pr must be set to one. If Sub\_Pictures are not present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, Sub\_Pr must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.1.3 Text Present (Txt\_Pr)

Txt\_Pr indicates whether encoded text is present or not in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, see chapter 5.7.1.1.1.4. If encoded text is present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, Txt\_Pr must be set to one. If encoded text is not present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area, Txt\_Pr must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.2 PreLoad\_Entry

PreLoad\_Entry[tno] contains the Time Code and the LSN at which the PreLoad Area (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.1) of Track[tno] starts. The syntax of PreLoad\_Entry is defined in Figure 3-49.

	# bytes	format	value
PreLoad_Entry() [tno] {			
PreLoad_Start_Address[tno]	4	UInt32	
PreLoad_Start_TC[tno]	3	Time_Code	
}			

Figure 3-49 : Syntax of PreLoad\_Entry

#### 3.2.9.2.2.1 PreLoad\_Start\_Address

The Sector with address PreLoad\_Start\_Address[tno] must contain the first byte of the Frame with Time Code equal to PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno].

#### 3.2.9.2.2.2 PreLoad\_Start\_TC

PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno] contains the Time Code at which the PreLoad Area of Track[tno] starts, see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.1. If the PreLoad Area of Track[tno] does not exist, PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno] must be equal to Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno], see chapter 3.2.3.2.

Notes:

- For (tno > 1), the PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno] can be located in Track[tno-1] or in Pause[tno].
- For Track[1], the PreLoad\_Start\_TC[1] must be located in Pause[1]. The length of Pause[1] must be such that PreLoad\_Start\_TC[1] is not negative.

#### 3.2.9.2.3 Track\_Pic\_Presence

Track\_Pic\_Presence[tno] indicates the presence of pictures for Track[tno]. The format of Track\_Pic\_Presence[tno] is defined in Figure 3-50.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Pic_SS[tno]	Pic_BA[tno]	Pic_BB[tno]	Pic_BC[tno]	Reserved		Resol[tno]	

Figure 3-50 : Format of Track\_Pic\_Presence

### 3.2.9.2.3.1 Slide Show Picture Present (Pic\_SS)

Pic\_SS[tno] indicates whether Slide Show pictures are present or not for Track[tno]. If one or more Slide Show pictures with a Start\_PTC (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4) in Track[tno] are present, Pic\_SS[tno] must be set to one. If no Slide Show pictures with a Start\_PTC in Track[tno] are present, Pic\_SS[tno] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.3.2 Background Picture A Present (Pic\_BA)

Pic\_BA[tno] indicates whether Background\_Picture\_A is present or not for Track[tno]. If Background\_Picture\_A is present for Track[tno], Pic\_BA[tno] must be set to one. If Background\_Picture\_A is not present for Track[tno], Pic\_BA[tno] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.3.3 Background Picture B Present (Pic\_BB)

Pic\_BB[tno] indicates whether Background\_Picture\_B is present or not for Track[tno]. If Background\_Picture\_B is present for Track[tno], Pic\_BB[tno] must be set to one. If Background\_Picture\_B is not present for Track[tno], Pic\_BB[tno] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.3.4 Background Picture C Present (Pic\_BC)

Pic\_BC[tno] indicates whether Background\_Picture\_C is present or not for Track[tno]. If Background\_Picture\_C is present for Track[tno], Pic\_BC[tno] must be set to one. If Background\_Picture\_C is not present for Track[tno], Pic\_BC[tno] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.3.5 Resol

Resol[tno] indicates whether the JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in Track[tno] have a resolution of 1440x1080 or a resolution of 1920x1080. If the resolution of the JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in Track[tno] is 1920x1080 (hvx), Resol[tno] must be set to zero. If the resolution of the JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in Track[tno] is 1440x1080 (hvx), Resol[tno] must be set to one. If there are no JPEG\_Pictures and no Sub\_Pictures available in Track[tno], Resol[tno] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.4 Track\_Txt\_Sub\_Presence

Track\_Txt\_Sub\_Presence[tno][c] indicates the presence of Sub Pictures and Text in Supplemantary Data for Track[tno] with Text\_Channel[c]. The format of Track\_Txt\_Sub\_Presence[tno][c] is defined in Figure 3-51.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Sub_St[tno][c]	Sub_Ti[tno][c]	Sub_Ly[tno][c]	Sub_Li[tno][c]	Txt_St[tno][c]	Txt_Ti[tno][c]	Txt_Ly[tno][c]	Txt_Li[tno][c]

**Figure 3-51 : Format of Track\_Txt\_Sub\_Presence**

#### 3.2.9.2.4.1 Streaming\_Info SubPicture Present (Sub\_St)

Sub\_St[tno][c] indicates whether Streaming\_Info SubPictures are present or not for Track[tno] with Text\_Channel[c]. If one or more Streaming\_Info SubPictures for Text\_Channel[c] with a Start\_PTC (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4) in Track[tno] are present, Sub\_St[tno][c] must be set to one. If no Streaming\_Info SubPictures for Text\_Channel[c] with a Start\_PTC in Track[tno] are present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_St[tno][c] must be set to zero.

#### 3.2.9.2.4.2 Title SubPicture Present (Sub\_Ti)

Sub\_Ti[tno][c] indicates whether any Title SubPicture is present or not for Track[tno] with Text\_Channel[c]. If Title SubPictures are present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_Ti[tno][c] must be set to one. If Title SubPictures are not present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_Ti[tno][c] must be set to zero.

#### 3.2.9.2.4.3 Lyrics SubPicture Present (Sub\_Ly)

Sub\_Ly[tno][c] indicates whether Lyrics SubPictures are present or not for Track[tno] with Text\_Channel[c]. If Lyrics SubPictures are present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_Ly[tno][c] must be set to one. If Lyrics SubPictures are not present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_Ly[tno][c] must be set to zero.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.9.2.4.4 Liner\_Notes SubPicture Present (Sub\_Li)

Sub\_Li[tno][c] indicates whether Liner\_Notes SubPictures are present or not for Track[tno] with Text Channel[c]. If Liner\_Notes SubPictures are present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_Li[tno][c] must be set to one. If Liner\_Notes SubPictures are not present for Track[tno][c], Sub\_Li[tno][c] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.4.5 Streaming\_Info Text Present (Txt\_St)

Txt\_St[tno][c] indicates whether Streaming\_Info Text is present or not for Track[tno] with Text Channel[c]. If Streaming\_Info Text is present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_St[tno][c] must be set to one. If Streaming\_Info Text is not present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_St[tno][c] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.4.6 Title Text Present (Txt\_Ti)

Txt\_Ti[tno][c] indicates whether Title Text is present or not for Track[tno] with Text Channel[c]. If Title Text is present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_Ti[tno][c] must be set to one. If Title Text is not present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_Ti[tno][c] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.4.7 Lyrics Text Present (Txt\_Ly)

Txt\_Ly[tno][c] indicates whether Lyrics Text is present or not for Track[tno] with Text Channel[c]. If Lyrics Text is present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_Ly[tno][c] must be set to one. If Lyrics Text is not present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_Ly[tno][c] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.2.4.8 Liner\_Notes Text Present (Txt\_Li)

Txt\_Li[tno][c] indicates whether Liner\_Notes Text is present or not for Track[tno] with Text Channel[c]. If Liner\_Notes Text is present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_Li[tno][c] must be set to one. If Liner\_Notes Text is not present for Track[tno][c], Txt\_Li[tno][c] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.9.3 Audio\_CCI

Audio\_CCI contains Copy Control Information for all Tracks in the current Audio Area. For the definition of Audio\_CCI, see Super Audio CD Part 3-General.

### 3.2.9.4 SD\_Slide\_List

SD\_Slide\_List contains the addresses of all sectors with the first byte of a Multiplexed Frame that contains the SD\_Unit (see chapter 5.7.1.1) with the start of a Slide\_Show\_Picture (see chapter 5.7.1.1.7.2). The syntax of SD\_Slide\_List is defined in Figure 3-52. SD\_Slide\_List must be present if minimally one Slide\_Show\_Picture is present in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area.

	# bytes	format	value
SD_Slide_List() {			
N_SD_Slides	2	UInt16	0..2047
Reserved	2	UInt8	0
for (n=1; n<=N_SD_Slides; n++)			
{			
SD_Slide_Address[n]	4	UInt32	
}			
Reserved	until 8192	UInt8	0
}			

Figure 3-52 : SD\_Slide\_List

#### 3.2.9.4.1 N\_SD\_Slides

N\_SD\_Slides contains the number of Slide\_Show\_Pictures in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area. A value of zero for N\_SD\_Slides is allowed. The maximum allowed value of N\_SD\_Slides is 2047.

### 3.2.9.4.2 SD\_Slide\_Address

SD\_Slide\_Address[n] contains the address of a sector with the first byte of a Multiplexed Frame that contains the SD\_Unit (see chapter 5.7.1.1) with the start of a Slide\_Show\_Picture[n] (see chapter 5.7.1.1.7.2) encoded in Supplementary Data of the current Audio Area. For  $1 \leq n \leq N\_SD\_Slides-1$  the following must be true:

SD\_Slide\_Address[n] ≤ SD\_Slide\_Address[n+1]

### 3.2.10 Set\_Of\_PlayLists

If Set\_Of\_PlayLists is present it contains one or more PlayLists. Each PlayList gives an alternative playback order and/or a different selection for the Audio Tracks on the Super Audio CD disc. Set\_Of\_PlayLists in the 2 Channel Stereo Area can only contain Tracks from the 2 Channel Stereo Area. Set\_Of\_PlayLists in the Multi Channel Area can only contain Tracks from the Multi Channel Area.

The presence of the Set\_Of\_PlayLists in the Area TOC is optional. Set\_Of\_PlayLists shall not be present in Area TOC-A. The maximum length of Set\_Of\_PlayLists is 5 Sectors. The syntax of Set\_Of\_PlayLists is defined in Figure 3-53.

	# bytes	format	value
Set_Of_PlayLists() {			
Set_Of_PlayLists_Signature	8	String	"SACDPLAY"
N_PlayLists	1	UInt8	1..16
Reserved	7	UInt8	0
for (c=1; c≤N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
for (p=1; p≤N_PlayLists; p++)			
{			
Playlist_Name_Ptr[c][p]	2	UInt16	
}			
}			
Reserved	until 272	UInt8	0
for (c=1; c≤N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
for (p=1; p≤N_PlayLists; p++)			
{			
Playlist_Name[c][p]		Special_String	
}			
}			
Reserved	until 2048	UInt8	0
for (p=1; p≤N_PlayLists; p++)			
{			
Playlist()[p]	512	Playlist	
}			
Reserved	until eos	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-53 : Syntax of Set\_Of\_PlayLists**

The value of N\_Text\_Channels is encoded in Text\_Channels of Area\_Data, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

#### 3.2.10.1 Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Signature

Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of Set\_Of\_PlayLists. The value of Set\_Of\_PlayLists\_Signature must be "SACDPLAY" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$50 \$4C \$41 \$59).

#### 3.2.10.2 N\_PlayLists

N\_PlayLists contains the number of PlayLists encoded in Set\_Of\_PlayLists. If Set\_Of\_PlayLists exists, the minimum value of N\_PlayLists is equal to one. The maximum value of N\_PlayLists is 16.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.2.10.3 PlayList\_Name\_Ptr

PlayList\_Name\_Ptr[c][p] contains the byte position in Set\_Of\_PlayLists for the first byte of PlayList\_Name[c][p]. If PlayList\_Name[c][p] is not used, PlayList\_Name[c][p] is not present and PlayList\_Name\_Ptr[c][p] must be set to zero.

### 3.2.10.4 PlayList\_Name

PlayList\_Name[c][p] contains the identification of PlayList[p] encoded for Text\_Channel c. It is recommended that PlayList\_Name[c][p] is present if PlayList[p] exists.

### 3.2.10.5 PlayList

The syntax of PlayList[p] is defined in Figure 3-54.

	# bytes	format	value
PlayList() [p] {			
PL_N_Entries[p]	1	UInt8	1..255
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
for (t=1; t<=PL_N_Entries[p]; t++)			
{			
PL_Track_Value[p][t]	1	UInt8	
PL_Index_Value[p][t]	1	UInt8	
}			
Reserved	510-2*PL_N_Entries[p]	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-54 : Syntax of PlayList**

The value of t defines the playback order for PlayList[p].

#### 3.2.10.5.1 PL\_N\_Entries

PL\_N\_Entries[p] contains the value of the number of entries in PlayList[p]. The maximum value of PL\_N\_Entries[p] is equal to 255. The value of zero is not allowed for PL\_N\_Entries[p].

#### 3.2.10.5.2 PL\_Track\_Value, PL\_Index\_Value

The combination of PL\_Track\_Value[p][t] and PL\_Index\_Value[p][t] is called PlayList\_Entry[p][t]. PlayList\_Entry[p][t] contains Track/Index combination t of PlayList[p].

The minimum value of PL\_Track\_Value[p][t] is one. The maximum value of PL\_Track\_Value[p][t] is equal to the value of N\_Tracks in the current Audio Area. The maximum value of PL\_Index\_Value[p][t] is equal to the value of N\_Stored\_Indexes[PL\_Track\_Value[p][t]]+1 in the current Audio Area. A value of zero for PL\_Index\_Value[p][t] means that the whole Track[PL\_Track\_Value[p][t]] must be played. A non-zero value of PL\_Index\_Value[p][t] means that only Index[PL\_Index\_Value[p][t]] of Track[PL\_Track\_Value[p][t]] must be played.

It is recommended to play seamless between two successive instances of PlayList\_Entry in a PlayList, if these two instances of PlayList\_Entry refer to two adjacent Track/Index combinations, this includes situations where the second Track/Index combination is preceded by a Pause.

### 3.3 DTCP

The DTCP Area contains the DTCP\_SRM\_List. The first Sector of the DTCP Area is Sector 400. The length of the DTCP Area is 48 Sectors.

#### 3.3.1 DTCP\_SRM\_List

DTCP\_SRM\_List contains information for full authentication as defined in the DTCP specification. The first byte of the DTCP\_SRM\_List is the first byte of Sector 400. If the DTCP\_SRM\_List is not present, all bytes of all Sectors in the DTCP Area must be set to zero.

The syntax of DTCP\_SRM\_List is defined in Figure 3-55.

	# bytes	format	value
DTCP_SRM_List() {			
DTCP_SRM0_List_Signature	8	String	"SACDSRM0"
DTCP_SRM[0]		SRM0	
Reserved	Until 48*2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-55 : Syntax of DTCP\_SRM\_List**

##### 3.3.1.1 DTCP\_SRM0\_List\_Signature

DTCP\_SRM0\_List\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of DTCP\_SRM0\_List. If DTCP\_SRM[0] exists, the value of DTCP\_SRM0\_List\_Signature must be "SACDSRM0" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$53 \$52 \$4D \$30).

##### 3.3.1.2 SRM0

The content of SRM0 is equal to the content of the SRM Type=0 as defined in the DTCP Specification.

### 3.4 EKB\_Data

EKB\_Data contains authorization data for SACD players. Two copies of EKB\_Data are stored, the first copy in the EKB1 Area, the second copy in the EKB2 Area. The syntax of EKB\_Data is defined in Figure 3-56.

	# bytes	format	value
EKB_Data() {			
EKB_Signature	8	String	"SACD_EKB"
EKB_Length	4	UInt32	
Reserved	4	UInt8	0
EKB		EKB	
Reserved	until 62*2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-56 : Syntax of EKB\_Data**

Note: EKB\_Data is not available on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower.

#### 3.4.1 EKB\_Signature

EKB\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the first Sector of EKB\_Data. The value of EKB\_Signature must be "SACD\_EKB" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$5F \$45 \$4B \$42).

#### 3.4.2 EKB\_Length

EKB\_Length contains the length of EKB in bytes.

#### 3.4.3 EKB

The use of EKB is defined in Super Audio CD Part 3-Player.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 3.5 Revocation\_TOC

The Revocation\_TOC is stored in the Rev TOC Area. The Revocation\_TOC contains pointers to data to be used by Approved Secure Digital Interfaces, see Super Audio CD Part 3-General. The Revocation\_TOC is stored in Sector 540. The Revocation\_TOC has a fixed length of one Sector. The syntax of the Revocation\_TOC is defined in Figure 3-57.

	# bytes	format	value
Revocation_TOC() { Rev_TOC_Signature	8	String	"SACDRTOC"
N_Revocation_Systems	1	UInt8	0..169
Reserved	7	UInt8	0
for (n=1; n<=N_Revocation_Systems; n++) {			
Revocation_ID[n]	2	UInt16	
Rev_Data_Length[n]	2	UInt16	
Rev_Data_Start_Address[n]	4	UInt32	
Rev_Attribute[n]	4	UInt32	
}			
Reserved	until 2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 3-57 : Syntax of Revocation\_TOC**

Note: The Revocation\_TOC is not available in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower.

#### 3.5.1.1 Rev\_TOC\_Signature

Rev\_TOC\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the Revocation\_TOC. The value of Rev\_TOC\_Signature must be "SACDRTOC" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$52 \$54 \$4F \$43).

#### 3.5.1.2 N\_Revocation\_Systems

N\_Revocation\_Systems contains the number of Revocation Systems used in the Revocation\_TOC. A value of zero is allowed for N\_Revocation\_Systems. The maximum allowed value of N\_Revocation\_Systems is 169.

#### 3.5.1.3 Revocation\_ID

Revocation\_ID[n] identifies the Revocation System using the Revocation Data pointed to by Rev\_Data\_Start\_Address[n]. A list of Revocation\_IDs will be defined in Super Audio CD Part 3-General Annex D. Revocation\_ID equal to zero is not allowed in the Revocation\_TOC. Each value of Revocation\_ID can be stored more than once in the Revocation\_TOC.

For the storage of Revocation\_ID[n] the following rule applies:

$$\text{Revocation\_ID}[n] \geq \text{Revocation\_ID}[n-1] \quad \text{for } n > 1 \text{ and } n \leq \text{N\_Revocation\_Systems}$$

#### **3.5.1.4 Rev\_Data\_Length**

Rev\_Data\_Length[n] contains the length in Sectors of the Revocation Data starting at Rev\_Data\_Start\_Address[n]. The following condition must be fulfilled:

$$\text{Rev\_Data\_Start\_Address}[n] + \text{Rev\_Data\_Length}[n] \leq \text{Rev\_Area\_End\_Address} + 1$$

#### **3.5.1.5 Rev\_Data\_Start\_Address**

Rev\_Data\_Start\_Address[n] contains the Sector address of the first Sector containing Revocation Data for the Revocation System with Revocation\_ID[n]. The following condition must be fulfilled:

$$\text{Rev\_Area\_Start\_Address} \leq \text{Rev\_Data\_Start\_Address}[n] \leq \text{Rev\_Area\_End\_Address}$$

Rev\_Area\_Start\_Address and Rev\_Area\_End\_Address are stored in Disc\_Info\_2, see chapter 3.1.1.6.

#### **3.5.1.6 Rev\_Attribute**

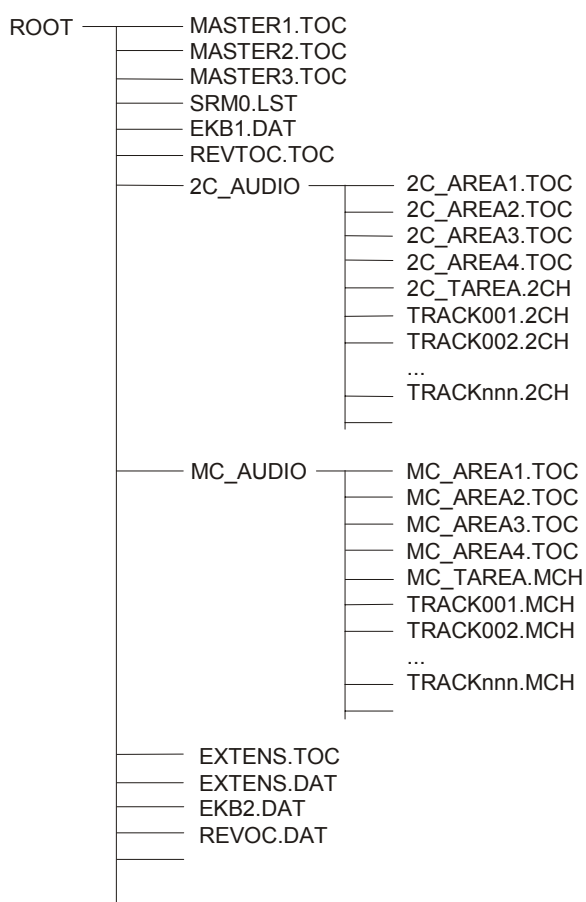
The content of Rev\_Attribute[n] is defined by the Revocation System identified by Revocation\_ID[n]. If the Revocation System identified by Revocation\_ID[n] does not define a value for Rev\_Attribute[n], Rev\_Attribute[n] must be set to zero. For each value of Revocation\_ID, the storage of Rev\_Attribute[n] must be in ascending order of the value of Rev\_Attribute[n].

## 4. File System

A Super Audio CD disc optionally contains the UDF file system. A Super Audio CD disc optionally contains the ISO 9660 file system. If both UDF and ISO 9660 are used on a disc, both file systems must represent the same files and directories. The requirements in chapter 4 are only valid if at least one file system is present on the disc.

The minimum required directories on a Super Audio CD disc are: Root directory and one of 2C\_AUDIO or MC\_AUDIO. Other files and/or directories may exist outside the required Super Audio CD directory structure.

An example of the directory structure of a Super Audio CD disc is given in Figure 4-1.



**Figure 4-1 : Example of the Super Audio CD directory structure**

### 4.1 UDF Requirements

If UDF is recorded on a Super Audio CD disc, it must be recorded such that the following requirements are fulfilled:

- UDF version 1.02 or higher shall be used on a Super Audio CD disc.
- The Minimum UDF Read Revision must be set to \$0102, see UDF chapter 2.2.6.4.
- All UDF structures on the disc must be recorded such that they are in conformance with the UDF version 1.02 read requirement.
- The Anchor Volume Descriptor Pointer shall be recorded at Sector 256 and one of Sectors N and N-256, where Sector N is the last Sector in the Volume Space of the disc.

## **4.2 Root Directory**

The required files in the ROOT directory are: MASTER1.TOC, MASTER2.TOC, MASTER3.TOC, SRM0.LST, EKB1.DAT, EKB2.DAT, REVTOC.TOC and REVOC.DAT. Note that on discs according to Version 1.3 or lower of the Super Audio CD Specification the files EKB1.DAT, EKB2.DAT, REVTOC.TOC and REVOC.DAT are not present.

### **4.2.1 Files MASTER1.TOC, MASTER2.TOC and MASTER3.TOC**

The files MASTER1.TOC, MASTER2.TOC and MASTER3.TOC each must contain a copy of the Master TOC, see chapters 2.2.4.1 and 3.1. MASTER1.TOC must start at LSN 510. The name of the file MASTER1.TOC must be "MASTER1.TOC". MASTER2.TOC must start at LSN 520. The length of the files MASTER1.TOC, MASTER2.TOC and MASTER3.TOC must be 20480 bytes each. The name of the file MASTER2.TOC must be "MASTER2.TOC". MASTER3.TOC must start at LSN 530. The name of the file MASTER3.TOC must be "MASTER3.TOC".

### **4.2.2 File SRM0.LST**

The file SRM0.LST contains the DTCP\_SRM\_List as defined in chapter 3.3.1. SRM0.LST must start at LSN 400. The name of SRM0.LST must be "SRM0.LST". The length of the file SRM0.LST must be  $48 \times 2048$  bytes.

### **4.2.3 Files EKB1.DAT and EKB2.DAT**

The files EKB1.DAT and EKB2.DAT each contain one copy of EKB\_Data as defined in chapter 3.4. EKB1.DAT must start at LSN 448. The name of EKB1.DAT must be "EKB1.DAT", the name of EKB2.DAT must be "EKB2.DAT". The length of both EKB1.DAT and EKB2.DAT is  $62 \times 2048$  bytes.

### **4.2.4 File REVTOC.TOC**

The file REVTOC.TOC contains the Revocation\_TOC as defined in chapter 3.5. REVTOC.TOC must start at LSN 540. The name of REVTOC.TOC must be "REVTOC.TOC". The length of REVTOC.TOC is 2048 bytes.

### **4.2.5 File EXTENS.TOC**

The file EXTENS.TOC contains the Extension\_TOC as defined in chapter 6.1. The name of EXTENS.TOC must be "EXTENS.TOC". The length of EXTENS.TOC is variable and must be equal to  $2048 \times E\_TOC\_Length$  bytes (see chapter 3.1.1.6.8). If  $E\_TOC\_Length$  is equal to zero, EXTENS.TOC shall not be present. Note that on discs according to Version 1.3 or lower of the Super Audio CD Specification EXTENS.TOC is not present.

### **4.2.6 File EXTENS.DAT**

The file EXTENS.DAT contains the Extension\_Data as defined in chapter 6.2. The name of EXTENS.DAT must be "EXTENS.DAT". The length of EXTENS.DAT is variable and must be equal to  $2048 \times (E\_Data\_End\_Address - E\_Data\_Start\_Address + 1)$  bytes, see chapter 3.1.1.6. If EXTENS.TOC is not present, EXTENS.DAT shall not be present. Note that on discs according to Version 1.3 or lower of the Super Audio CD Specification EXTENS.DAT is not present.

### **4.2.7 File REVOC.DAT**

The file REVOC.DAT contains revocation data for Approved Digital Interfaces. The name of REVOC.DAT must be "REVOC.DAT". The start address of REVOC.DAT must be equal to the value of  $Rev\_Area\_Start\_Address$ , see chapter 3.1.1.6. The length of REVOC.DAT must be equal to  $1024 \times 2048$  bytes.

## **4.3 Directory 2C\_AUDIO**

If and only if the 2-Channel Stereo Area (see chapter 2.2) is present on a Super Audio CD, the directory 2C\_AUDIO must be present. The name of the 2C\_AUDIO directory must be "2C\_AUDIO". The required files in the 2C\_AUDIO directory are: 2C\_AREA1.TOC, 2C\_AREA2.TOC, 2C\_TAREA.2CH and a file TRACKnnn.2CH for each Track in the 2-Channel Stereo Area.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 4.3.1 Files 2C\_AREA1.TOC and 2C\_AREA2.TOC

The files 2C\_AREA1.TOC and 2C\_AREA2.TOC each must contain a copy of the Area TOC-A for the 2-Channel Stereo Area, see chapters 2.2.6.1 and 3.2. The name of the file 2C\_AREA1.TOC must be "2C\_AREA1.TOC". The name of the file 2C\_AREA2.TOC must be "2C\_AREA2.TOC". 2C\_AREA1.TOC must start at the first Sector of the 2-Channel Stereo Area. If the 2C\_AUDIO directory is present, the 2-Channel Stereo Area must start at LSN 544. The length of each file 2C\_AREA1.TOC and 2C\_AREA2.TOC must be equal to  $2048 \times 2CH\_TOC\_Length$  bytes (see chapter 3.1.1.3.6).

### 4.3.2 Files 2C\_AREA3.TOC and 2C\_AREA4.TOC

The files 2C\_AREA3.TOC and 2C\_AREA4.TOC each must contain a copy of the Area TOC-B for the 2-Channel Stereo Area, see chapters 2.2.6.1 and 3.2. The name of the file 2C\_AREA3.TOC must be "2C\_AREA3.TOC". The name of the file 2C\_AREA4.TOC must be "2C\_AREA4.TOC". The length of each file 2C\_AREA3.TOC and 2C\_AREA4.TOC must be equal to  $2048 \times 2CH\_TOC\_B\_Length$  bytes (see chapter 3.1.1.6.5). If 2CH\_TOC\_B\_Length is equal to zero, 2C\_AREA3.TOC and 2C\_AREA4.TOC shall not exist.

### 4.3.3 File 2C\_TAREA.2CH

The file 2C\_TAREA.2CH represents the Track Area of the 2-Channel Audio Area. The name of the file 2C\_TAREA.2CH must be "2C\_TAREA.2CH". The first Sector of 2C\_TAREA.2CH must be equal to the Track\_Area\_Start\_Address (see chapter 3.2.1.2.13) of the 2-Channel Stereo Area. The last Sector of 2C\_TAREA.2CH must be equal to the Track\_Area\_End\_Address (see chapter 3.2.1.2.14) as defined in Area TOC-B, or in Area TOC-A if Area TOC-B does not exist, for the 2-Channel Stereo Area. The length of the file 2C\_TAREA.2CH must be a multiple of 2048 bytes.

### 4.3.4 Files TRACKnnn.2CH

The file TRACKnnn.2CH represents Track nnn in the 2-Channel Stereo Area, see chapter 2.2.6.2. The name of the files TRACKnnn.2CH must be "TRACKnnn.2CH", where "nnn" is the Track number of the represented Track, encoded in ISO 646 as a three digit decimal number with leading zeros. The highest value of "nnn" must be equal to the value of N\_Tracks as defined in Area TOC-B, or in Area TOC-A if Area TOC-B does not exist, for the 2-Channel Stereo Area. TRACKnnn.2CH starts at the Track\_Start\_Address[nnn] (see chapter 3.2.2.2) of the 2-Channel Stereo Area. The size in Sectors of TRACKnnn.2CH must be equal to Track\_Length[nnn] (see chapter 3.2.2.3) in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. The length of each TRACKnnn.2CH file must be a multiple of 2048 bytes. All files TRACKnnn.2CH overlap with the file 2C\_TAREA.2CH.

## 4.4 Directory MC\_AUDIO

If and only if the Multi Channel Area (see chapter 2.2) is present on a Super Audio CD, the directory MC\_AUDIO must be present. The name of the MC\_AUDIO directory must be "MC\_AUDIO". The required files in the MC\_AUDIO directory are: MC\_AREA1.TOC, MC\_AREA2.TOC, MC\_TAREA.MCH and a file TRACKnnn.MCH for each Track in the Multi Channel Area.

### 4.4.1 Files MC\_AREA1.TOC and MC\_AREA2.TOC

The files MC\_AREA1.TOC and MC\_AREA2.TOC each must contain a copy of the Area TOC-A for the Multi Channel Stereo Area, see chapters 2.2.6.1 and 3.2. The name of the file MC\_AREA1.TOC must be "MC\_AREA1.TOC". The name of the file MC\_AREA2.TOC must be "MC\_AREA2.TOC". MC\_AREA1.TOC must start at the first Sector of the Multi Channel Area. If the 2C\_AUDIO directory is not present, the Multi Channel Area must start at LSN 544. The length of each file MC\_AREA1.TOC and MC\_AREA2.TOC must be equal to  $2048 \times MC\_TOC\_Length$  bytes (see chapter 3.1.1.3.7).

#### **4.4.2 Files MC\_AREA3.TOC and MC\_AREA4.TOC**

The files MC\_AREA3.TOC and MC\_AREA4.TOC each must contain a copy of the Area TOC-B for the Multi Channel Stereo Area, see chapters 2.2.6.1 and 3.2. The name of the file MC\_AREA3.TOC must be "MC\_AREA3.TOC". The name of the file MC\_AREA4.TOC must be "MC\_AREA4.TOC". The length of each file MC\_AREA3.TOC and MC\_AREA4.TOC must be equal to  $2048 \times \text{MC\_TOC\_B\_Length}$  bytes (see chapter 3.1.1.6.6). If MC\_TOC\_B\_Length is equal to zero, MC\_AREA3.TOC and MC\_AREA4.TOC shall not exist.

#### **4.4.3 File MC\_TAREA.MCH**

The file MC\_TAREA.MCH represents the Track Area of the Multi Channel Audio Area. The name of the file MC\_TAREA.MCH must be "MC\_TAREA.MCH". The first Sector of MC\_TAREA.MCH must be equal to the Track\_Area\_Start\_Address (see chapter 3.2.1.2.13) of the Multi Channel Area. The last Sector of MC\_TAREA.MCH must be equal to the Track\_Area\_End\_Address (see chapter 3.2.1.2.14) as defined in Area TOC-B, or in Area TOC-A if Area TOC-B does not exist, for the Multi Channel Area. The length of the file MC\_TAREA.MCH must be a multiple of 2048 bytes.

#### **4.4.4 Files TRACKnnn.MCH**

The file TRACKnnn.MCH represents Track nnn in the Multi Channel Area, see chapter 2.2.6.2. The name of the files TRACKnnn.MCH must be "TRACKnnn.MCH", where "nnn" is the Track number of the represented Track, encoded in ISO 646 as a three digit decimal number with leading zeros. The highest value of "nnn" must be equal to the value of N\_Tracks in as defined in Area TOC-B, or in Area TOC-A if Area TOC-B does not exist, for the Multi Channel Area. TRACKnnn.MCH starts at the Track\_Start\_Address[nnn] (see chapter 3.2.2.2) of the Multi Channel Area. The size in Sectors of TRACKnnn.MCH must be equal to Track\_Length[nnn] (see chapter 3.2.2.3) of the Multi Channel Area. The length of each TRACKnnn.MCH file must be a multiple of 2048 bytes. All files TRACKnnn.MCH overlap with the file MC\_TAREA.MCH.

### **4.5 Permissions**

If a Super Audio CD disc contains the ISO 9660 file system and if Extended Attributes (see ISO 9660 chapter 9.5) are used, it is recommended to use the following Permissions (ISO 9660 9.5.3):

Files: System, Group, Owner, Any User: read is allowed

Directories: System, Group, Owner, Any User: read and execute are allowed.

If a Super Audio CD disc contains the UDF file system, it is recommended to use the following Permissions in the File Entry (ECMA 167 4/14.9.5):

Files: Other, Group and Owner: read is allowed

Directories: Other, Group and Owner: read and execute are allowed.



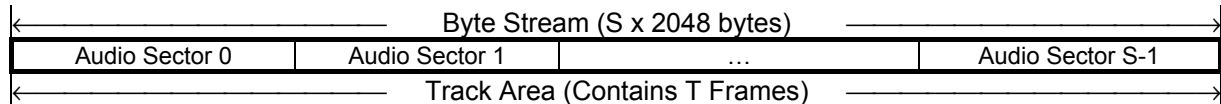
## 5. Audio Data Format

The information in a Track Area (see chapter 2.2.6.2) must be stored in one Byte Stream.

Note that for the definition of the Audio Data Format the Track Area includes Bonus Tracks if present.

A Byte Stream is stored in an integer number of Sectors. The Sectors used by a Byte Stream are called Audio Sectors. The format of Audio Sectors is defined in chapter 5.1.

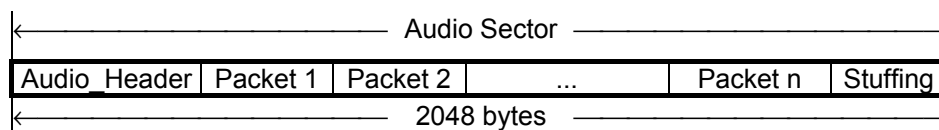
A Byte Stream must contain an integer number of Multiplexed Frames. The format of a Multiplexed Frame is defined in chapter 5.2. The syntax of a Byte Stream is defined in chapter 5.3. An example of a Byte Stream is given in Figure 5-1.



**Figure 5-1 : Example of a Byte Stream**

### 5.1 Audio Sector Format

The structure of the Sectors in a Byte Stream must be as defined in Figure 5-2. Each Audio Sector must start with an Audio\_Header. The Audio\_Header must be followed by one or more Packets. If the last Packet in a Sector does not end at the last byte of the Audio Sector, Stuffing bytes must be added upto the last byte of the Audio Sector. The syntax of an Audio Sector is defined in chapter 5.3.1.



**Figure 5-2 : Structure of an Audio Sector**

Audio\_Header, Packets and Stuffing are all contained in an integer number of bytes.

#### 5.1.1 Audio\_Header

The Audio\_Header contains information on the Packets in the Sector, and on the Frames (see chapter 5.2) that start in the Sector. The syntax of the Audio\_Header is defined in chapter 5.3.1.1.

#### 5.1.2 Packet

One Packet only can contain one type of data, Audio Data, Supplementary Data or Padding Data. A Packet with Audio Data is called an Audio Packet. A Packet with Supplementary Data is called a Supplementary Data Packet. A Packet with Padding Data is called a Padding Packet. A Packet can only belong to one Audio Sector. An Audio Sector must contain minimum one Packet. An Audio Sector contains maximum seven Packets.

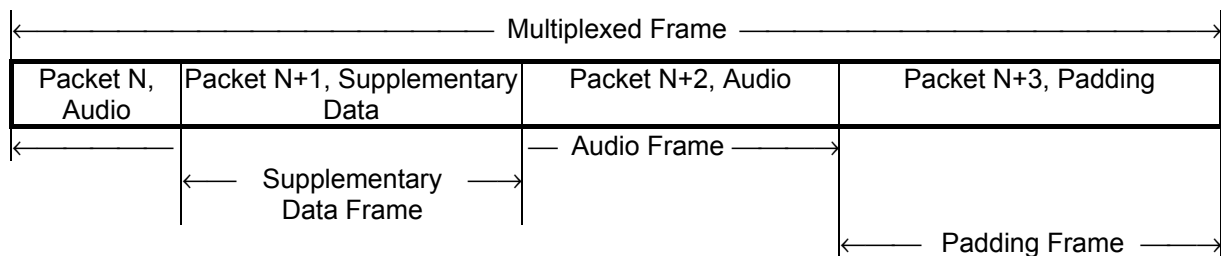
## 5.2 Multiplexed Frame Format

A Multiplexed Frame consists of an integer number of Packets. A Multiplexed Frame must contain minimum one Audio Packet. A Multiplexed Frame can contain zero or more Supplementary Data and Padding Packets. The first Packet of a Multiplexed Frame must always be an Audio Packet, both for Plain DSD and for DST coded Multiplexed Frames. A Multiplexed Frame is contained in maximum 16 Sectors, see chapter 5.3.1.1.5.3.

Each Multiplexed Frame has a time length of 1/75 Second. The concatenation of all Audio Packets in a Multiplexed Frame is called an Audio Frame. The concatenation of all Supplementary Data Packets in a Multiplexed Frame is called a Supplementary Data Frame. The concatenation of all Padding Packets in a Multiplexed Frame is called a Padding Frame. Audio Frames, Supplementary Data Frames and Padding Frames are called Elementary Frames.

Each Multiplexed Frame has a Time Code expressed in Minutes (0..255), Seconds (0..59), Frames (0..74). The Time Code must start with 0:0:0 at the first Audio Frame in the Track Area of an Audio Area. The Time Code must increase contiguously throughout the whole Track Area.

An example of a Multiplexed Frame is given in Figure 5-3. An example of the structure of Audio Sectors with Packets and Frames is given in Figure 5-4. An example of a Byte Stream is given in Figure 5-5.



**Figure 5-3 : Example of a Multiplexed Frame**

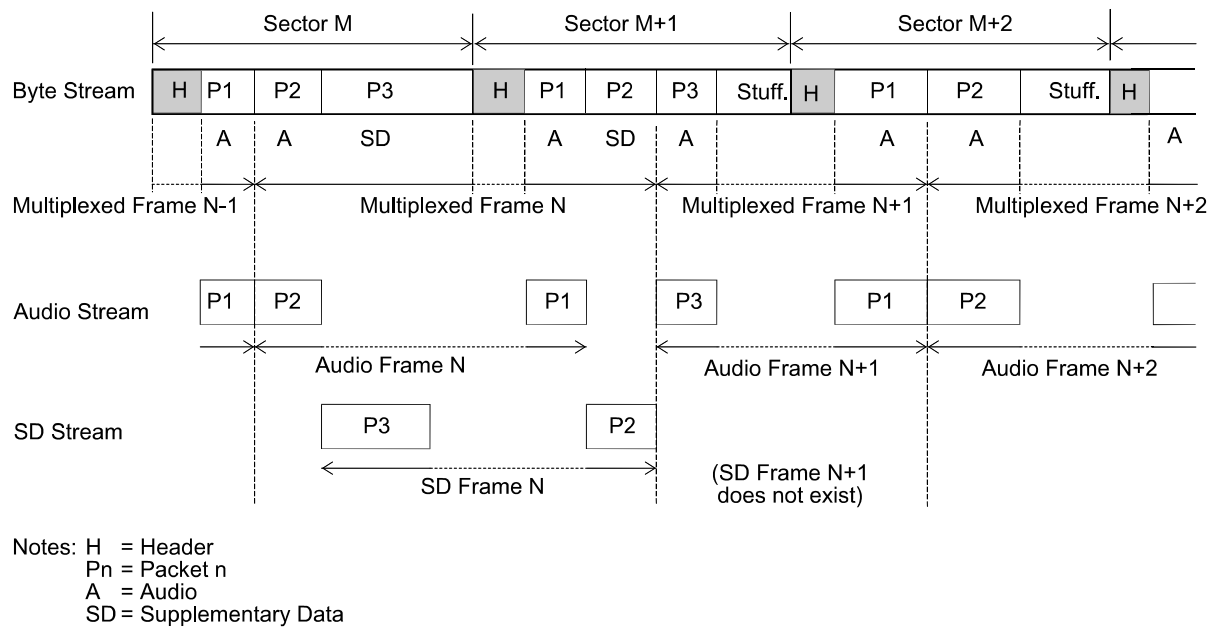
Audio Sector M	Audio Sector M+1	Audio Sector M+2	Audio Sector M+3	Audio Sector M+4
Audio Header	Audio Header	Audio Header	Audio Header	Audio Header
Packet 2 of Audio Frame N-1	Packet 1 of Supplementary Data Frame N	Packet 3 of Audio Frame N	Packet 4 of Audio Frame N	Packet 2 of Audio Frame N+2
Packet 1 of Audio Frame N	Packet 2 of Audio Frame N		Packet 2 of Supplementary Data Frame N	
			Packet 1 of Audio Frame N+1	
			Padding Frame N+1	
			Packet 1 of Audio Frame N+2	

**Figure 5-4 : Example of the structure of Audio Sectors**

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0



**Figure 5-5 : Example of a Byte Stream**

### 5.3 Byte Stream Syntax

A Byte Stream is the concatenation of all Multiplexed Frames in an Audio Area. The syntax of a Byte Stream is defined in Figure 5-6.

```

Byte Stream() {
    for (i=0; i<Stream_Sector_Len; i++)
    {
        Audio_Sector() [i]
    }
}
    
```

	#bytes	Format	value
Audio_Sector() [i]	2048	Audio_Sector	

**Figure 5-6 : Syntax of Byte Stream**

Stream\_Sector\_Len is the length in Sectors of the Byte Stream.

#### 5.3.1 Audio\_Sector

The Syntax of an Audio\_Sector is defined in Figure 5-7.

```

Audio_Sector() {
    Audio_Header()
    for (p=1; p<=N_Packets; p++)
    {
        Packet [p]
    }
    Stuffing
}
    
```

	#bytes	format	value
Audio_Header()		Audio_Header	
Packet [p]		Packet	
Stuffing	until eos	UInt8	0

**Figure 5-7 : Syntax of Audio\_Sector**

The value of N\_Packets is defined in Audio\_Header, see chapter 5.3.1.1.

### 5.3.1.1 Audio\_Header

Audio\_Header contains information on the content of the Packets in the Audio\_Sector. The syntax of the Audio\_Header is defined in Figure 5-8.

	#bits	format	value
Audio_Header() {			
N_Packets	3	UInt3	1..7
N_Frame_Starts	3	UInt3	0..7
Reserved	1	UInt1	0
DST_Coded	1	UInt1	
for (p=1; p<=N_Packets; p++)			
{			
Packet_Info() [p]	16	Packet_Info	
}			
for (f=1; f<=N_Frame_Starts; f++)			
{			
Frame_Info() [f]	24 or 32	Frame_Info	
}			
}			

**Figure 5-8 : Syntax of Audio\_Header**

Note that the allocation of the fields in Audio\_Header is defined in bits and not in bytes.

#### 5.3.1.1.1 N\_Packets

N\_Packets contains the number of Packets in the Audio\_Sector. The minimum allowed value for N\_Packets is one.

#### 5.3.1.1.2 N\_Frame\_Starts

N\_Frame\_Starts contains the number of Frames that start in this Audio\_Sector.

#### 5.3.1.1.3 DST\_Coded

DST\_Coded defines whether the Track Area is DST Coded or not. If Frame\_Format (see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1) is zero, DST\_Coded must be set to one. If Frame\_Format is equal to 2 or 3, DST\_Coded must be set to zero.

#### 5.3.1.1.4 Packet\_Info

Packet\_Info[p] contains control information for Packet[p] in the Audio\_Sector. The syntax of Packet\_Info[p] is defined in Figure 5-9.

	#bits	format	value
Packet_Info() [p] {			
Frame_Start [p]	1	UInt1	0..1
Reserved	1	UInt1	0
Data_Type [p]	3	Data_Type	2,3,7
Packet_Length [p]	11	UInt11	1..2045
}			

**Figure 5-9 : Syntax of Packet\_Info**

##### 5.3.1.1.4.1 Frame\_Start

Frame\_Start indicates that a Frame starts in this Packet. If a Frame starts in this Packet, Frame\_Start must be set to one, else Frame\_Start must be set to zero.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

#### 5.3.1.1.4.2 Data\_Type

Data\_Type[p] defines the content of Packet[p] in the Audio Sector. The definition of Data\_Type is given in Figure 5-10.

Value	Definition
0 .. 1	Reserved
2	Audio Packet
3	Supplementary Data Packet
4 .. 6	Reserved
7	Padding

Figure 5-10 : Definition of Data\_Type

#### 5.3.1.1.4.3 Packet\_Length

Packet\_Length[p] contains the length in bytes of Packet[p]. The minimum allowed length of a Packet is one byte. The maximum length of a Packet is 2045 bytes.

#### 5.3.1.1.5 Frame\_Info

For each Frame that starts in the Audio Sector, there is a Frame\_Info[f]. For each Frame, the Time Code is given. In addition, if the Frame\_Format is zero, the number of Sectors used by the Frame and the number of Audio Channels is given. The syntax of Frame\_Info is defined in Figure 5-11.

	#bits	format	value
Frame_Info() [f] {			
Time_Code[f]	24	Time_Code	
if (Frame_Format == 0 /* == DST */) {			
Ch_Bit_1[f]	1	UInt1	
N_Sectors[f]	5	UInt5	1..16
Ch_Bit_2[f]	1	UInt1	
Ch_Bit_3[f]	1	UInt1	
}			
}			

Figure 5-11 : Syntax of Frame\_Info

The value of Frame\_Format is given in the Area TOC, see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1. Note that if DST is used, the length of Frame\_Info is 32 bits, else the length is 24 bits.

##### 5.3.1.1.5.1 Time\_Code

Time\_Code[f] gives the Time Code for all Elementary Frames in Multiplexed Frame[f]. The syntax of Time\_Code is defined in chapter 1.7.2.9.

##### 5.3.1.1.5.2 Ch\_Bit\_n

The combination of Ch\_Bit\_1[f], Ch\_Bit\_2[f] and Ch\_Bit\_3[f] defines the number of audio channels used in Audio Frame[f]. The usage of Ch\_Bit\_1, Ch\_Bit\_2 and Ch\_Bit\_3 is defined in Figure 5-12. The number of audio channels encoded in Ch\_Bit\_1, Ch\_Bit\_2 and Ch\_Bit\_3 must be equal to the value of N\_Channels in the Area TOC, see chapter 3.2.1.2.4.

Ch_Bit_1	Ch_Bit_2	Ch_Bit_3	Meaning
0	0	0	N_Channels = 2
0	0	1	N_Channels = 5
0	1	0	N_Channels = 6
All other combinations			Reserved for future use

Figure 5-12 : Definition of Ch\_Bit\_n

### 5.3.1.1.5.3 N\_Sectors

N\_Sectors[f] is the number of Sectors used by Multiplexed Frame[f]. If the start of the first Packet of a Multiplexed Frame is located in Sector X, and the end of the last Packet of the same Multiplexed Frame is located in Sector Y, then the value of N\_Sectors is equal to Y-X+1. Two examples with N\_Sectors = 3 is given in Figure 5-13.

Sector	Sector	Sector	
#####	#####	###	N_Sectors = 3
#####	#####	#####	N_Sectors = 3

**Figure 5-13 : Examples of the value of N\_Sectors**

If N\_Channels (see chapter 3.2.1.2.4) is equal to 2, the value of N\_Sectors must be between 1 and 7. If N\_Channels is equal to 5, the value of N\_Sectors must be between 1 and 14. If N\_Channels is equal to 6, the value of N\_Sectors must be between 1 and 16.

### 5.3.1.2 Packet

The length of every Packet must be an integer number of bytes. An Audio Packet contains bytes from the Audio Stream, see chapter 5.6. A Supplementary Data Packet contains Supplementary Data, see chapter 5.7. All bytes in a Padding Packet must be set to zero.

### 5.3.1.3 Stuffing

If the last byte of the last Packet in an Audio\_Sector is not the last byte of that Audio\_Sector, Stuffing bytes must be added until the end of that Audio\_Sector.

If an Audio Area contains Bonus Tracks, the following rules apply:

- The first Packet of the Pause of the first Bonus Track (Pause[N+1] in Figure 2-8) must be the first Packet of an Audio\_Sector. Note that if the length of the Pause is equal to zero, the first Packet of the first Bonus Track must be the first Packet of an Audio\_Sector.
- If the last byte of the last Packet of the last Track preceding the first Bonus Track is not the last byte of an Audio\_Sector, Stuffing bytes must be added until the end of that Audio\_Sector.

The content of Stuffing bytes must be zero.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 5.4 2-Channel Stereo Area

The Audio Frames in the 2-Channel Stereo Area can be either Plain DSD coded or DST coded. If the 2-Channel Stereo Area contains Bonus Tracks, the 2-Channel Stereo Area must be DST coded.

#### 5.4.1 Plain DSD

If the 2-Channel Stereo Area is Plain DSD coded (see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1), the Audio Sectors must use one out of two available fixed formats. In the fixed formats, a fixed pattern of Audio Packets, Supplementary Data Packets and Padding Packets is used. The two fixed formats are: 3 Frames in 14 Sectors, and 3 Frames in 16 Sectors.

The last Sector of a Track Area, must be a Sector that contains the last Audio Packet of an Audio Frame.

##### 5.4.1.1 3 Frames in 14 Sectors

With the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format, the Byte Stream is blocked in groups of 14 Sectors. Each group of 14 Sectors contains 3 Multiplexed Frames. For each block of 3 Frames, 365 bytes of Supplementary Data are available. For each Sector in a group of 14 Sectors, the length of all Packets is defined in Figure 5-14. For each Sector in a group of 14 Sectors, the Packet sequence is defined in Figure 5-15.

Sector number	Audio Header length	Supplementary Data Packet length	Audio Packet length
n	8	24	2016
n+1	5	27	2016
n+2	5	27	2016
n+3	5	27	2016
n+4	10	22	1344, 672
n+5	5	27	2016
n+6	5	27	2016
n+7	5	27	2016
n+8	5	27	2016
n+9	10	22	672, 1344
n+10	5	27	2016
n+11	5	27	2016
n+12	5	27	2016
n+13	5	27	2016

Figure 5-14 : Packet length for the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

Sector number	Audio Header	Supplementary Data Packets	Audio Packets
n	Audio Header	SD Packet[0][5]	Audio Packet[1][1]
n+1	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][1]	Audio Packet[1][2]
n+2	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][2]	Audio Packet[1][3]
n+3	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][3]	Audio Packet[1][4]
n+4	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][4]	Audio Packet[1][5]   Audio Packet[2][1]
n+5	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][1]	Audio Packet[2][2]
n+6	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][2]	Audio Packet[2][3]
n+7	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][3]	Audio Packet[2][4]
n+8	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][4]	Audio Packet[2][5]
n+9	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][5]	Audio Packet[2][6]   Audio Packet[3][1]
n+10	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][1]	Audio Packet[3][2]
n+11	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][2]	Audio Packet[3][3]
n+12	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][3]	Audio Packet[3][4]
n+13	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][4]	Audio Packet[3][5]
		SD Packet[3][5]	

**Figure 5-15 : Packet sequence for the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format**

In Figure 5-15, SD Packet[a][b] indicates Supplementary Data Packet b of Frame a. In Figure 5-15, Audio Packet[a][b] indicates Audio Packet b of Frame a.

SD Packet[0][5] is the last SD Packet of the previous group of 14 Sectors. The last SD Packet of Frame 3, is the first SD Packet in the next group of 14 Sectors.

The first Sector of a Track can only be Sector n, Sector n+4 or Sector n+9, see chapter 3.2.2.2. The first Sector of a Track Area must be Sector n. In the first Sector of a Track Area, the content of SD Packet[0][5] must be set to zero.

The last Sector of a Track can only be Sector n, Sector n+4 or Sector n+9. The last Sector of a Track Area can be Sector n, Sector n+4 or Sector n+9.

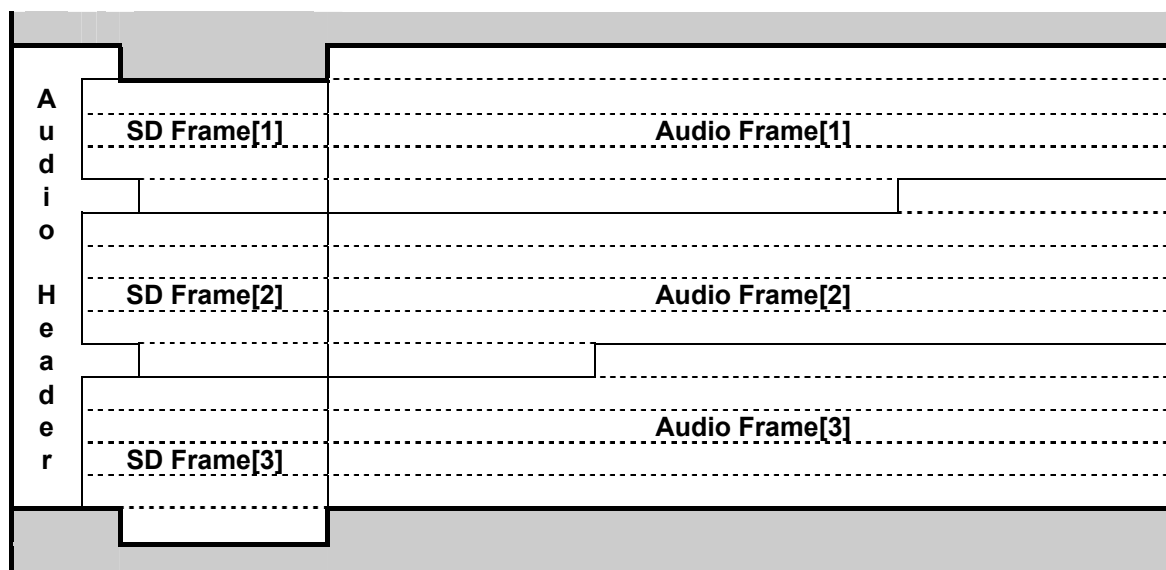
The last Sector of a Track Area must contain a dummy start of a new Frame. The Audio Header in the last Sector of a Track Area must contain a Time\_Code with the content of all fields set to \$FF. After the last Packet of the last Multiplexed Frame, the last Sector of a Track Area must contain one Padding Packet, see chapters 5.3.1.1.4.2 and 5.3.1.2. This Padding Packet forms the content of the Multiplexed Frame with the Time\_Code set to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0



**Figure 5-16 : Layout of the 3 Frames in 14 Sectors format**

### 5.4.1.2 3 Frames in 16 Sectors

With the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format, the Byte Stream is blocked in groups of 16 Sectors. Each group of 16 Sectors contains 3 Multiplexed Frames. For each block of 3 Frames, 4451 bytes of Supplementary Data are available. For each Sector in a group of 16 Sectors, the length of all Packets is defined in Figure 5-17. For each Sector in a group of 16 Sectors, the Packet sequence is defined in Figure 5-18.

Sector number	Audio Header length	Supplementary Data Packet length	Audio Packet length
n	8	276	1764
n+1	5	279	1764
n+2	5	279	1764
n+3	5	279	1764
n+4	5	279	1764
n+5	10	274	588, 1176
n+6	5	279	1764
n+7	5	279	1764
n+8	5	279	1764
n+9	5	279	1764
n+10	10	274	1176, 588
n+11	5	279	1764
n+12	5	279	1764
n+13	5	279	1764
n+14	5	279	1764
n+15	5	279	1764

**Figure 5-17 : Packet length for the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format**

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

Sector number	Audio Header	Supplementary Data Packets	Audio Packets
n	Audio Header	SD Packet[0][6]	Audio Packet[1][1]
n+1	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][1]	Audio Packet[1][2]
n+2	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][2]	Audio Packet[1][3]
n+3	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][3]	Audio Packet[1][4]
n+4	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][4]	Audio Packet[1][5]
n+5	Audio Header	SD Packet[1][5]	Audio Packet[1][6]   Audio Packet[2][1]
n+6	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][1]	Audio Packet[2][2]
n+7	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][2]	Audio Packet[2][3]
n+8	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][3]	Audio Packet[2][4]
n+9	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][4]	Audio Packet[2][5]
n+10	Audio Header	SD Packet[2][5]	Audio Packet[2][6]   Audio Packet[3][1]
n+11	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][1]	Audio Packet[3][2]
n+12	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][2]	Audio Packet[3][3]
n+13	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][3]	Audio Packet[3][4]
n+14	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][4]	Audio Packet[3][5]
n+15	Audio Header	SD Packet[3][5]	Audio Packet[3][6]
		SD Packet[3][6]	

**Figure 5-18 : Packet sequence for the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format**

In Figure 5-18, SD Packet[a][b] indicates Supplementary Data Packet b of Frame a. In Figure 5-18, Audio Packet[a][b] indicates Audio Packet b of Frame a.

SD Packet[0][6] is the last SD Packet of the previous group of 16 Sectors. The last SD Packet of Frame 3, is the first SD Packet in the next group of 16 Sectors.

The first Sector of a Track can only be Sector n, Sector n+5 or Sector n+10, see chapter 3.2.2.2. The first Sector of a Track Area must be Sector n. In the first Sector of a Track Area, the content of SD Packet[0][6] must be set to zero.

The last Sector of a Track can only be Sector n, Sector n+5 or Sector n+10. The last Sector of a Track Area can be Sector n, Sector n+5 or Sector n+10.

The last Sector of a Track Area must contain a dummy start of a new Frame. The Audio Header in the last Sector of a Track Area must contain a Time\_Code with the content of all fields set to \$FF. After the last Packet of the last Multiplexed Frame, the last Sector of a Track Area must contain one Padding Packet, see chapters 5.3.1.1.4.2 and 5.3.1.2. This Padding Packet forms the content of the Multiplexed Frame with the Time\_Code set to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

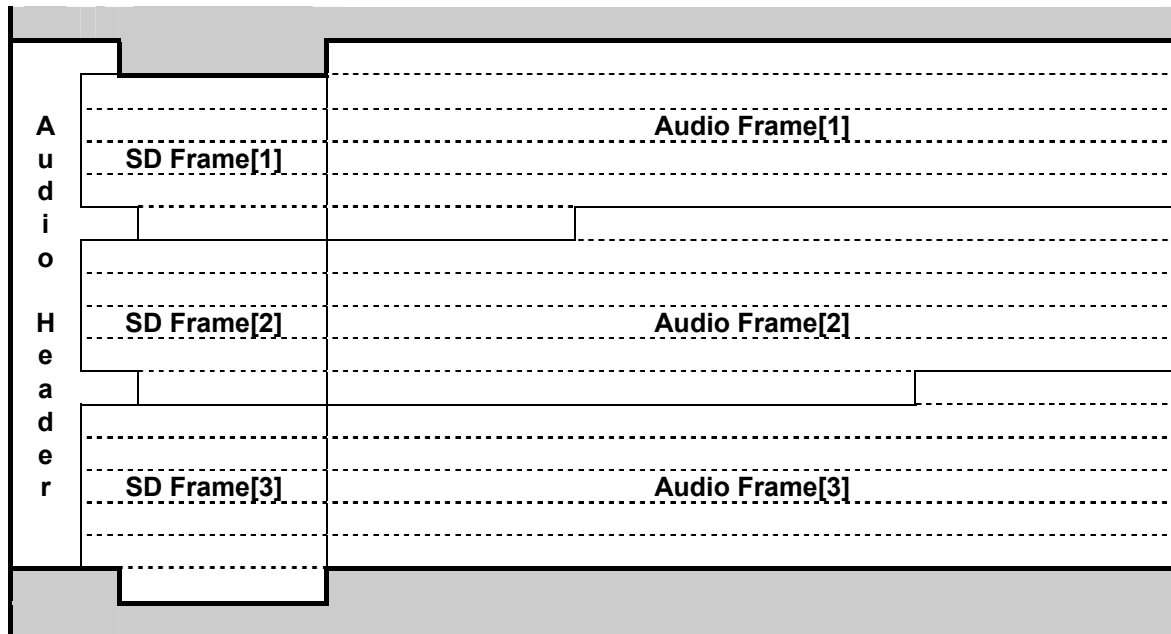


Figure 5-19 : Layout of the 3 Frames in 16 Sectors format

### 5.4.2 DST Coded DSD

If the 2-Channel Stereo Area is DST coded (see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1), the Audio Sectors use a flexible format. In the flexible format, the first Packet in a Multiplexed Frame must be an Audio Packet. After the first Packet, the pattern of Audio Packets, Supplementary Data Packets and Padding Packets can be chosen freely.

### 5.5 Multi Channel Area

The Audio signal in the Multi Channel Area must be DST coded.

The Audio Sectors used in the Multi Channel Area must use the flexible format. In the flexible format, the first Packet in a Multiplexed Frame must be an Audio Packet. After the first Packet, the pattern of Audio Packets, Supplementary Data Packets and Padding Packets can be chosen freely.



## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 5.6.3.1 DSD

DSD contains the audio data for one Plain DSD Audio\_Frame. The syntax of DSD is defined in Figure 5-21. An example of a 5 channel DSD Frame is given in Figure 5-22.

	# bytes	format
DSD() {		
for (Byte_Nr=0; Byte_Nr<Frame_Length; Byte_Nr++)		
{		
for (Channel_Nr=1; Channel_Nr<=N_Channels;		
{		
DSD_Byte[Channel_Nr][Byte_Nr]	1	Audio_Byte
}		
}		
}		

**Figure 5-21 : Syntax of DSD**

The definition of Audio\_Byte is given in chapter 5.6.1.

**Frame\_Length** is the length of an Audio Frame in bytes per audio channel. The Frame\_Length can be calculated from the Sample\_Frequency (see chapter 3.2.1.2.2). For a Sample\_Frequency of 64\*44100 Hz, Frame\_Length can be calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{Frame\_Length} = \frac{64 * 44100}{75 * 8} = 4704 \text{ bytes per Audio Channel}$$

**Channel\_Nr** is the number of the Audio Channel, for the Channel Mapping see chapter 3.2.1.2.4.

**N\_Channels** is the number of audio channels used. The value of N\_Channels is given in the Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

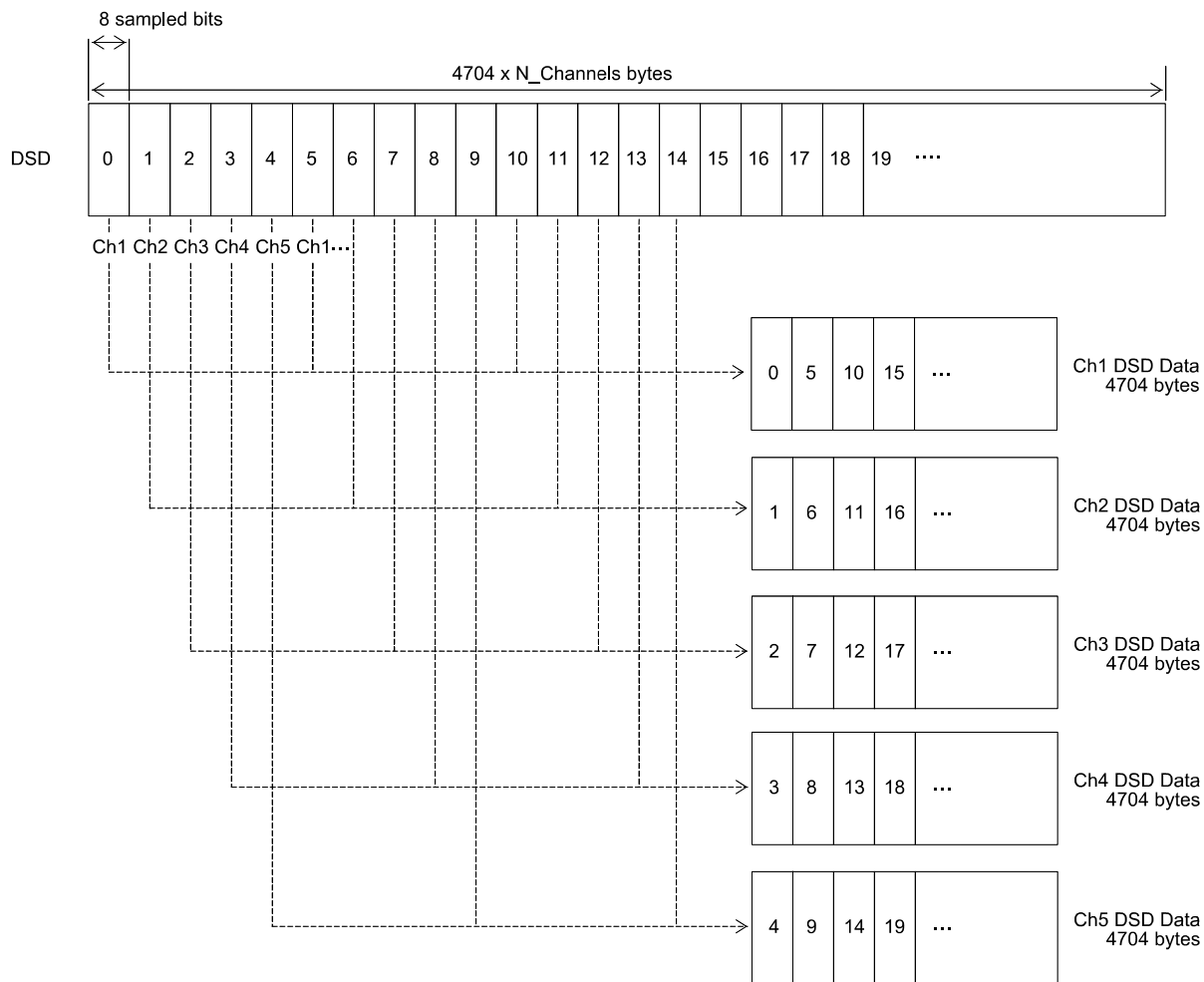


Figure 5-22 : Example of a 5 channel DSD Frame

5.6.3.1.1 DSD\_Byte

DSD\_Byte[Channel\_Nr][Byte\_Nr] contains the DSD signal as defined in chapter 5.6.1.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 5.6.3.2 DST

DST contains the audio data for one DST coded Audio\_Frame. The syntax of DST is defined in Figure 5-23.

	# bits	format	value
DST() {			
Processing_Mode	1	BsMsbf	
if (Processing_Mode == 0)			
{			
DST_X_Bit	1	BsMsbf	
Reserved	6	BsMsbf	0
DSD()		DSD	
}			
else			
{			
Segmentation()		Segmentation	
Mapping()		Mapping	
Half_Probability()		Half_Probability	
Filter_Coeff_Sets()		Filter_Coeff_Sets	
Probability_Tables()		Probability_Tables	
Arithmetic_Coded_Data()		Arithmetic_Coded_Data	
}			
}			

Figure 5-23 : Syntax of DST

#### 5.6.3.2.1 Processing\_Mode

If the Processing\_Mode bit is set to one, the Audio\_Frame contains the DST\_X\_Bit and the DSD signal in a lossless coded form. If the Processing\_Mode bit is set to zero, the Audio\_Frame contains the DST\_X\_Bit and the DSD signal without lossless coding.

#### 5.6.3.2.2 DST\_X\_Bit

If Frame\_Format (see chapter 3.2.1.2.3.1) is equal to zero, the Track Area is DST coded and each Audio\_Frame contains one DST\_X\_Bit.

On the disc two patterns are allowed for the DST\_X\_Bit:

Pattern A: DST\_X\_Bit = 0

Pattern B: Successive DST\_X\_Bits within an Audio Area shall be repetitively filled with the pattern \$7E 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 on discs according to this version of the specification. DST\_X\_Bits must be encoded on the disc with the most significant bit of the most significant byte first.

The pattern \$7E 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 is called the Basic Pattern. Any successive sequence of bits from the Basic Pattern with length < 104 bits is called an Incomplete Basic Pattern. The disc must be encoded such that there is maximum one Incomplete Basic Pattern in between two Basic Patterns.

More encoding patterns for the DST\_X\_Bit can be defined in future versions of the Super Audio CD Specification. It is allowed that one Audio Area contains both Pattern A and Pattern B. Players according to this version of the Super Audio CD Specification shall ignore the content of the DST\_X\_Bit.

#### 5.6.3.2.2.1 P(DST\_X\_Bit) (Multiplexing/Demultiplexing)

P(DST\_X\_Bit) shall be derived from Coef[0][0] (see chapter 5.6.3.2.7) as follows. If Coef[0][0] = %c<sub>8</sub>c<sub>7</sub>c<sub>6</sub>c<sub>5</sub>c<sub>4</sub>c<sub>3</sub>c<sub>2</sub>c<sub>1</sub>c<sub>0</sub>, then P(DST\_X\_Bit) shall be equal to %0c<sub>0</sub>c<sub>1</sub>c<sub>2</sub>c<sub>3</sub>c<sub>4</sub>c<sub>5</sub>c<sub>6</sub> + 1 of type Uint8. c<sub>x</sub> represents the value of individual bits, with x is in the range 0..8. The value of P(DST\_X\_Bit) is in the range 1..128.

### 5.6.3.2.3 DSD

See chapter 5.6.3.1.

### 5.6.3.2.4 Segmentation

For each Audio Channel, the Audio Frame is partitioned into one or more Segments for Filters, and one or more Segments for Ptables. Each Segment may use a different Prediction Filter / Ptable. An example of Segmentation is shown in Figure 5-24. The syntax of Segmentation is defined in Figure 5-25.

←————— Audio Frame —————→				
Channel number	Segments			
1	Segment 1	Segment 2	Segment 3	Segment 4
2	Segment 1	Segment 2	Segment 3	Segment 4
3	Segment 1			
4	Segment 1		Segment 2	
5	Segment 1			
6	Segment 1	Segment 2	Segment 3	

**Figure 5-24 : Example of Segmentation**

	# bits	format
Segmentation() {		
Same_Segmentation	1	
if(Same_Segmentation == 0)		
{		
Filter_Segmentation()		Segment_Alloc
Ptable_Segmentation()		Segment_Alloc
}		
else		
{		
Filter_And_Ptable_Segmentation()		Segment_Alloc
}		
}		

**Figure 5-25 : Syntax of Segmentation**

#### Filter\_Segmentation

For each Audio Channel, the Audio Frame is partitioned into one or more Segments for Prediction Filters. Each Segment may use a different Prediction Filter. The variables `Nr_Of_Segments[]` and `Segment_Length[][]` from `Segment_Alloc` (see chapter 5.6.3.2.4.2) used for `Filter_Segmentation` are referred to as:

- `Filters.Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]` and
- `Filters.Segment_Length[Channel_Nr][1..Filters.Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]]`.

With `Channel_Nr = 1..N_Channels`.

#### Ptable\_Segmentation

For each Audio Channel, the Audio Frame is partitioned into one or more Segments for Ptables. Each Segment may use a different Ptable. The variables `Nr_Of_Segments[]` and `Segment_Length[][]` from `Segment_Alloc` (see chapter 5.6.3.2.4.2) used for `Ptable_Segmentation` are referred to as:

- `Ptables.Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]` and
- `Ptables.Segment_Length[Channel_Nr][1..Ptables.Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]]`.

With `Channel_Nr = 1..N_Channels`.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### Filter\_And\_Ptable\_Segmentation

For each Audio Channel, the Audio Frame is partitioned into one or more Segments. Each Segment may use a different combination of Prediction Filter and Ptable. For each Audio Channel, the following equations must be true:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Filters.Nr\_Of\_Segments}[\text{Channel\_Nr}] &= \text{Ptables.Nr\_Of\_Segments}[\text{Channel\_Nr}] = \text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}[\text{Channel\_Nr}] \\ \text{Filters.Segment\_Length}[\text{Channel\_Nr}][\text{ }] &= \text{Ptables.Segment\_Length}[\text{Channel\_Nr}][\text{ }] = \\ \text{Segment\_Length}[\text{Channel\_Nr}][\text{ }] & \end{aligned}$$

With  $\text{Channel\_Nr} = 1..N\_Channels$ .

#### 5.6.3.2.4.1 Same\_Segmentation

If Same\_Segmentation is one, the Ptables and Prediction Filters use one and the same Segmentation. If Same\_Segmentation is zero, the partitioning for Prediction Filters is independent from the partitioning for Ptables, for the Audio Frame.

#### 5.6.3.2.4.2 Segment\_Alloc

Segment\_Alloc defines the Segmentation for the Prediction Filters and/or the Ptables. The syntax of Segment\_Alloc is defined in Figure 5-26.

For each Audio Channel, the variables Nr\_Of\_Segments and Segment\_Length[1..Nr\_Of\_Segments] from Channel\_Segmentation (see chapter 5.6.3.2.4.2.2) are referred to as:

- $\text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}[\text{Channel\_Nr}]$
- $\text{Segment\_Length}[\text{Channel\_Nr}][1..\text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}[\text{Channel\_Nr}]]$

In the syntax diagrams, syntax variables are shown in *italics*.

```
Segment_Alloc() {
    Resolution_Read = false
    Same_Segm_For_All_Channels
    if (Same_Segm_For_All_Channels == 0)
    {
        for (Channel_Nr=1; Channel_Nr<=N_Channels;
            Channel_Nr++)
        {
            Channel_Segmentation() [Channel_Nr]
        }
    }
    else
    {
        Channel_Segmentation() [1]
    }
}
```

# bits    format

1

Channel\_Segmentation

Channel\_Segmentation

Figure 5-26 : Syntax of Segments

**Resolution\_Read** indicates whether Resolution from Channel\_Segmentation, see chapter 5.6.3.2.4.2.2, has been read. Resolution\_Read is set to true in the Channel\_Segmentation of the first Audio Channel with more than one Segment. Note that if Prediction Filters and Ptables use independent Segmentation, they also use an independent Resolution\_Read.

**Channel\_Nr** is a local index variable.

**N\_Channels** is the number of audio channels used. The value of N\_Channels is given in the Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

#### 5.6.3.2.4.2.1 Same\_Segm\_For\_All\_Channels

If Same\_Segm\_For\_All\_Channels is one, only the Segmentation for the first Audio Channel is stored and  $\text{Channel\_Segmentation}()[\text{Channel\_Nr}] = \text{Channel\_Segmentation}()[1]$  for all Audio Channels. If Same\_Segm\_For\_All\_Channels is zero, the Audio Frame is partitioned into segments independent for each Audio Channel.

#### 5.6.3.2.4.2.2 Channel\_Segmentation

Channel\_Segmentation defines the Segmentation of the Prediction Filters and/or the Ptables. The syntax of Channel\_Segmentation is defined in Figure 5-27.

The following variables are used in the syntax of Channel\_Segmentation:

- Nr\_Of\_Segments
- Start[1..Nr\_Of\_Segments]
- Segment\_Length[1..Nr\_Of\_Segments]

	# bits	format
Channel_Segmentation() {		
Nr_Of_Segments = 1		
Start[1] = 0		
End_Of_Channel_Segm	1	
while (End_Of_Channel_Segm == 0)		
{		
if (Resolution_Read == false)		
{		
Resolution	13	UiMsbF
Resolution_Read = true		
}		
Scaled_Length[Nr_Of_Segments]	1..13	UiMsbF
Segment_Length[Nr_Of_Segments] =		
Resolution * Scaled_Length[Nr_Of_Segments]		
Start[Nr_Of_Segments+1] =		
Start[Nr_Of_Segments] + Segment_Length[Nr_Of_Segments]		
Nr_Of_Segments++		
End_Of_Channel_Segm	1	
}		
Segment_Length[Nr_Of_Segments] =		
Frame_Length - Start[Nr_Of_Segments]		
}		

**Figure 5-27 : Syntax of Channel\_Segmentation**

**Nr\_Of\_Segments** is the number of Segments for the current Audio Channel. The maximum number of Segments is MAXNRSEGS. MAXNRSEGS must be 4 for the Filter\_Segmentation, 8 for the Ptable\_Segmentation, and 4 for the Filter\_And\_Ptable\_Segmentation.

**Resolution\_Read** indicates whether the variable Resolution has been read in this or a previous Channel\_Segmentation. Resolution\_Read is set to true in the Channel\_Segmentation of the first Audio Channel with more than one Segment. Note that if Prediction Filters and Ptables use independent Segmentation, they also use an independent Resolution\_Read.

**Segment\_Length[Seg\_Nr]** contains the length of the Segment in bytes, where:

$$1 \leq \text{Seg\_Nr} \leq \text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}$$

**Start[Seg\_Nr]** is the starting position in bytes of Segment[Seg\_Nr].

**Frame\_Length**, see chapter 5.6.3.1.

##### 5.6.3.2.4.2.2.1 End\_Of\_Channel\_Segm

If End\_Of\_Channel\_Segm is zero, one or more values for Scaled\_Length will follow. If End\_Of\_Channel\_Segm is one, the Channel\_Segmentation structure ends.

##### 5.6.3.2.4.2.2.2 Resolution

Each value of Scaled\_Length is multiplied by Resolution to get the Segment length in bytes. Resolution is stored only once, at the beginning of the first Audio Channel with more than one Segment. If all Audio Channels have only one Segment, Resolution is not encoded.

Resolution must be in the range of 1 to Frame\_Length - MINSEGLEN. MINSEGLEN must be 128 bytes for Filter\_Segmentation, 4 bytes for Ptable\_Segmentation, and 128 bytes for Filter\_And\_Ptable\_Segmentation.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 5.6.3.2.4.2.2.3 Scaled\_Length

For each Segment, except the last one, a value of Scaled\_Length is encoded. The length in bytes of a Segment is calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{Segment\_Length}[\text{Seg\_Nr}] = \text{Resolution} * \text{Scaled\_Length}[\text{Seg\_Nr}]$$

Where:

$$1 \leq \text{Seg\_Nr} < \text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}$$

The minimum Segment length of each Segment is MINSEGLEN, see chapter 5.6.3.2.4.2.2.2.

For Ptable\_Segmentation the length of the first Segment of each Audio Channel must be at least  $(\text{Pred\_Order}[\text{Filter}[\text{Channel\_Nr}][1]] + 7) / 8$  bytes. For the definition of Filter[][] see chapter 5.6.3.2.5. For the definition of Pred\_Order[] see chapter 5.6.3.2.7.

The number of bits needed to encode Scaled\_Length[Seg\_Nr] depends on the value of Range. Range must be calculated with the following formula:

$$\text{Range} = \text{Trunc}\left(\frac{\text{Frame\_Length} - \text{Start}[\text{Seg\_Nr}] - \text{MINSEGLEN}}{\text{Resolution}}\right)$$

If  $2^{n-1} \leq \text{Range} < 2^n$ , n bits must be used to encode Scaled\_Length[Seg\_Nr], see Figure 5-28. The minimum value of Range is 1. The length of the last Segment is not encoded on the disc. The length of the last Segment can be calculated from the Frame Length and the start position of the last Segment with the following formula:

$$\text{Segment\_Length}[\text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}] = \text{Frame\_Length} - \text{Start}[\text{Nr\_Of\_Segments}]$$

Range	bits used	Range	bits used
1	1	128..255	8
2..3	2	256..511	9
4..7	3	512..1023	10
8..15	4	1024..2047	11
16..31	5	2048..4095	12
32..63	6	4096..8191	13
64..127	7		

Figure 5-28 : Bits used to encode Scaled\_Length

### 5.6.3.2.5 Mapping

Mapping defines the Prediction Filters and Ptables used with the Segments specified in chapter 5.6.3.2.4. An example of Prediction Filter allocation for the Segmentation example in Figure 5-24 is shown in Figure 5-29. The syntax of Mapping is defined in Figure 5-30.

←————— Audio Frame —————→				
Channel number	Prediction Filters			
1	Filter 0	Filter 1	Filter 2	Filter 3
2	Filter 0	Filter 1	Filter 2	Filter 3
3	Filter 4			
4	Filter 0		Filter 2	
5	Filter 4			
6	Filter 5	Filter 2		Filter 3

**Figure 5-29 : Example of filter allocation**

	# bits	format
Mapping() {		
Same_Mapping	1	
if(Same_Mapping == 0)		
{		
Filter_Mapping()		Maps
Ptable_Mapping()		Maps
}		
else		
{		
Filter_And_Ptable_Mapping()		Maps
}		
}		

**Figure 5-30 : Syntax of Mapping**

#### Filter\_Mapping

For each Audio Channel and each Segment, a Prediction Filter number is encoded. For Filter\_Mapping, the variable Element[ ][ ] from Channel\_Mapping (see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.2.2) contains the Prediction Filter numbers. For Filter\_Mapping, Element[ ][ ] is referred to as:

Filter[Channel\_Nr][1..Filters.Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr]].

For Filter\_Mapping, the variable Nr\_Of\_Elements (see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.2.2) is referred to as Nr\_Of\_Filters.

#### Ptable\_Mapping

For each Audio Channel and each Segment, a Ptable number is encoded. For Ptable\_Mapping, the variable Element[ ][ ] from Channel\_Mapping (see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.2.2) contains the Ptable numbers. For Ptable\_Mapping, Element[ ][ ] is referred to as:

Ptable[Channel\_Nr][1..Ptables.Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr]].

For Ptable\_Mapping, the variable Nr\_Of\_Elements (see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.2.2) is referred to as Nr\_Of\_Ptables.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### Filter\_And\_Ptable\_Mapping

For each Audio Channel and each Segment, a common Prediction Filter and Ptable number is encoded. For Filter\_and\_Ptable\_Mapping, the variable Element[ ][ ] from Channel\_Mapping (see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.2.2) contains the common Prediction Filter and Ptable numbers. For Filter\_and\_Ptable\_Mapping, Element[ ][ ] is referred to as:

Filter[Channel\_Nr][1..Filters.Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr]]

as well as:

Ptable[Channel\_Nr][1..Ptables.Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr]].

For Filter\_and\_Ptable\_Mapping, the variable Nr\_Of\_Elements (see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.2.2) is referred to as Nr\_Of\_Filters as well as Nr\_Of\_Ptables.

### 5.6.3.2.5.1 Same\_Mapping

If Same\_Mapping is one, the Ptables and Prediction Filters use one and the same Mapping. If Same\_Mapping is zero, the mapping for Prediction Filters is independent from the mapping for Ptables, for the Audio Frame.

### 5.6.3.2.5.2 Maps

Maps defines the mapping of Prediction Filters and Ptables to the Segments defined in chapter 5.6.3.2.4. The syntax of Maps is defined in Figure 5-31.

The following variables are used in the syntax of Maps:

- For each Audio Channel, Element[Channel\_Nr][1..Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr]]
- Nr\_Of\_Elements

	# bits	format
Maps() {		
Nr_Of_Elements = 0		
Same_Maps_For_All_Channels	1	
if (Same_Maps_For_All_Channels == 0)		
{		
for (Channel_Nr=1; Channel_Nr<=N_Channels;		
Channel_Nr++)		
{		
Channel_Mapping() [Channel_Nr]		Channel_Mapping
}		
} else		
{		
Channel_Mapping() [1]		Channel_Mapping
}		
}		

**Figure 5-31 : Syntax of Maps**

**Nr\_Of\_Elements** is the total number of Prediction Filter and/or Ptables, used in Maps. Nr\_Of\_Elements must be in the range 1 .. 2 \* N\_Channels.

**Channel\_Nr** is a local index variable, used in Figure 5-31 and Figure 5-32.

**N\_Channels** is the number of audio channels used. The value of N\_Channels is given in the Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

### 5.6.3.2.5.2.1 Same\_Maps\_For\_All\_Channels

If Same\_Maps\_For\_All\_Channels is one, only Element[1][ ] is stored and each Audio Channel uses the same array Element[Channel\_Nr][ ] = Element[1][ ]. If Same\_Maps\_For\_All\_Channels is equal to zero, Element[Channel\_Nr][ ] is stored independent for each Audio Channel. If Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr] does not have the same value for all Audio Channels, Same\_Maps\_For\_All\_Channels must be zero.

### 5.6.3.2.5.2.2 Channel\_Mapping

Channel\_Mapping contains per Audio Channel the Prediction Filter and/or Ptable numbers used for each Segment. The syntax of Channel\_Mapping is defined in Figure 5-32.

```

Channel_Mapping() {
  for (Seg_Nr=1; Seg_Nr<=Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]; Seg_Nr++)
  {
    Element[Channel_Nr][Seg_Nr]
    if (Element[Channel_Nr][Seg_Nr] == Nr_Of_Elements)
    {
      Nr_Of_Elements++
    }
  }
}

```

# bits    format

0..4    UiMsbf

**Figure 5-32 : Syntax of Channel\_Mapping**

**Nr\_Of\_Elements** is the total number of Prediction Filters and/or Ptables for all channels. Nr\_Of\_Elements is initialized in Maps, see Figure 5-31.

**Channel\_Nr** is the index variable from Maps, see Figure 5-31.

**Seg\_Nr** is a local index variable.

**Nr\_Of\_Segments[Channel\_Nr]** is the total number of Segments used in the current Audio Frame for Audio Channel Channel\_Nr.

#### 5.6.3.2.5.2.2.1 Element

Element is the Prediction Filter and/or Ptable number used in the Segment. The number of bits used to encode Element depends on the value of Nr\_Of\_Elements. In each iteration, Element must be <= Nr\_Of\_Elements. Therefore, Element[1][1] is always zero and is not stored (#bits = 0). For all other Audio Channels and Segments, Nr\_Of\_Elements > 0 and the number of bits needed to store Element is n with:  $2^{n-1} \leq \text{Nr\_Of\_Elements} < 2^n$ , see Figure 5-33.

Nr_Of_Elements	#bits used
0	0
1	1
2..3	2
4..7	3
8..12	4

**Figure 5-33 : Bits used to encode Element**

### 5.6.3.2.6 Half\_Probability

The syntax of Half\_Probability is defined in Figure 5-34.

```

Half_Probability() {
  for (Channel_Nr=1; Channel_Nr<=N_Channels; Channel_Nr++)
  {
    Half_Prob[Channel_Nr]
  }
}

```

# bits    format

1        BsMsbf

**Figure 5-34 : Syntax of Half\_Probability**

**Channel\_Nr** is a local index variable.

**N\_Channels** is the number of audio channels used. The value of N\_Channels is given in the Area\_TOC\_0, see chapter 3.2.1.2.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

#### 5.6.3.2.6.1 Half\_Prob

Half\_Prob is used to encode, for each Audio Channel, which method will be used for applying a probability value to the arithmetic decoder. The definition of Half\_Prob is given in Figure 5-35.

Half_Prob[ ]	Probability to use during first Pred_Order[ ] bits of the Audio Channel
0	Use the entries from the Ptable.
1	Use $p=\frac{1}{2}$ (corresponds to P_one = 128).

**Figure 5-35 : Definition of Half\_Prob**

For optimum coding gain it is desired that the next residual bit in E has the value that has the greatest probability. If a probability is applied that reflects a high chance of the next E bit being 1 while the next E bit is a 0, then more than 1 bit is required in the arithmetic code to send this bit.

The prediction filter is initially filled with an initialization pattern. During the first Pred\_Order[Filter[Channel\_Nr][1]] samples in Audio Channel Channel\_Nr, the Prediction Filter is gradually filled with real DSD data. As a consequence the probability distribution can be quite different from the rest of the frame, and the combination of applied E and P for these bits results in more bits than desired. When applying a probability of  $\frac{1}{2}$  during encoding, each bit will also cost only one bit in the arithmetic code.

Therefore Half\_Prob is available for each channel separately to be able to overrule a bad combination of E and P at the start of a frame.

#### 5.6.3.2.7 Filter\_Coef\_Sets

For each Segment in each Audio Channel, the DST decoder uses a Prediction Filter. In case two or more Prediction Filters are equal, the corresponding filter coefficients may be encoded only once. The variables used in the syntax of Filter\_Coef\_Sets are:

- Pred\_Order[Filter\_Nr]
- Coef[Filter\_Nr][0..Pred\_Order[Filter\_Nr]-1]

With Filter\_Nr = 0..Nr\_Of\_Filters-1.

All Prediction Filter coefficients are encoded in the disc. Per Prediction Filter, the order of prediction (the number of coefficients) and the coefficients are encoded. The Prediction Filter coefficients can be coded using simple linear prediction and Rice coding. Rice coding is a variable length coding technique (special case of Huffman coding) which is used to decrease the number of bits required for a certain "message", without loss of information. The syntax of Filter\_Coef\_Sets is defined in Figure 5-36.

The least significant bit of Coef[0][0] is called DST\_Y\_Bit, see chapter 5.6.3.2.7.1.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

	# bits	format
Filter_Coef_Sets() {		
for (Filter_Nr=0; Filter_Nr<Nr_Of_Filters; Filter_Nr++)		
{		
Coded_Pred_Order	7	UiMsbfbf
Pred_Order[Filter_Nr]=Coded_Pred_Order+1		
Coded_Filter_Coef_Set	1	BsMsbfbf
if (Coded_Filter_Coef_Set==0)		
{		
for (Coef_Nr=0; Coef_Nr<Pred_Order[Filter_Nr];		
Coef_Nr++)		
{		
Coef[Filter_Nr][Coef_Nr]	9	SiMsbfbf
}		
}		
else		
{		
CC_Method	2	BsMsbfbf
for (Coef_Nr=0; Coef_Nr<CCPO; Coef_Nr++)		
{		
Coef[Filter_Nr][Coef_Nr]	9	SiMsbfbf
}		
CCM	3	UiMsbfbf
for (Coef_Nr=CCPO; Coef_Nr<Pred_Order[Filter_Nr];		
Coef_Nr++)		
{		
Run_Length=0		
do		
{		
RL_Bit	1	BsMsbfbf
if (RL_Bit==0)		
{		
Run_Length++		
}		
} while (RL_Bit==0)		
LSBs	0..6	UiMsbfbf
Delta=(Run_Length<<CCM)+LSBs		
if (Delta!=0)		
{		
Sign	1	BsMsbfbf
if (Sign==1)		
{		
Delta = -Delta		
}		
}		
Coef[Filter_Nr][Coef_Nr] = Delta		
Delta8 = 0		
for (Tap_Nr=0; Tap_Nr<CCPO; Tap_Nr++)		
{		
Delta8 += 8*CCPC[Tap_Nr]*Coef[Filter_Nr][Coef_Nr-Tap_Nr-1]		
}		
if (Delta8>=0)		
{		
Coef[Filter_Nr][Coef_Nr] -= trunc((Delta8+4)/8)		
}		
else		
{		
Coef[Filter_Nr][Coef_Nr] += trunc((-Delta8+3)/8)		
}		
}		
}		
}		
}		

Figure 5-36 : Syntax of Filter\_Coef\_Sets



## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

**Nr\_Of\_Filters** is the value calculated in Mapping, see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.

**Pred\_Order[]** is an array that contains the prediction order for each Prediction Filter. Where  $\text{Pred\_Order}[\text{Filter\_Nr}] = \text{Coded\_Pred\_Order} + 1$ , for  $\text{Filter\_Nr} \in (0..\text{Nr\_Of\_Filters}-1)$ . The allowed range of the prediction order is:  $1 \leq \text{Pred\_Order}[\text{Filter\_Nr}] \leq 128$ .

**Coef[][]** is a two-dimensional array that contains all coefficients of all Prediction Filters. Each entry of **Coef[][]** must be in the range of -256 to +255. The first (left) index is the **Filter\_Nr** and ranges from 0 through **Nr\_Of\_Filters**-1. The second (right) index is the coefficient number and ranges from 0 through **Pred\_Order[Filter\_Nr]**-1.

**CCPO** is the Coefficient Coding Prediction Order (CCPO). The relation between **CC\_Method** and **CCPO** is defined in Figure 5-37.

CC_Method	CCPO
'00'	1
'01'	2
'10'	3
'11'	Not used

Figure 5-37 : Relation between CC\_Method and CCPO

The restriction  $\text{CCPO} < \text{Pred\_Order}[\text{Filter\_Nr}]$  applies.

**Run\_Length** is a help variable to count the number of zeros in the run length code that is part of the Rice code.

**Delta** is a help variable to calculate the Rice coded Number.

**Delta8** is a help variable to calculate the Rice coded Number.

**CCPC[]** is an array that contains the Coefficient Coding Prediction Coefficients (CCPC) that are used for the linear prediction of the Filter coefficients. The relation between **CC\_Method** and **CCPC[]** is defined in Figure 5-38.

CC_Method	CCPC[0]	CCPC[1]	CCPC[2]
'00'	-1	-	-
'01'	-2	1	-
'10'	-9/8	-5/8	6/8
'11'	Not used	Not used	Not used

Figure 5-38 : Relation between CC\_Method and CCPC[]

The linear prediction requires rounding, as specified in the syntax of Figure 5-36.

#### 5.6.3.2.7.1 DST\_Y\_Bit

**DST\_Y\_Bit** is the least significant bit of **Coef[0][0]**. The **DST\_Y\_Bit** must be set to 1 in discs according to this version of the specification. It must be taken into account that the **DST\_Y\_Bit** may also be set to zero in later versions of the Super Audio CD specification. Players according to this version of the Super Audio CD Specification shall ignore the content of the **DST\_Y\_Bit**.

#### 5.6.3.2.7.2 Coded\_Pred\_Order

**Coded\_Pred\_Order** is a 7 bit unsigned integer that contains the coded prediction order of the current Prediction Filter.

#### **5.6.3.2.7.3 Coded\_Filter\_Coef\_Set**

Coded\_Filter\_Coef\_Set indicates whether the Prediction Filter coefficients are predicted and Rice coded. Coded\_Filter\_Coef\_Set is set to zero if the Prediction Filter coefficients are stored directly. Coded\_Filter\_Coef\_Set is set to one if the Prediction Filter coefficients are predicted and Rice coded.

The maximum number of bits permitted for a single Prediction Filter inside Filter\_Coef\_Sets is:

$$7+1+\text{Pred\_Order[]}*9$$

where 7 counts the bits for Coded\_Pred\_Order, 1 counts the Coded\_Filter\_Coef\_Set bit and the rest the Pred\_Order[] coefficients of 9 bit each.

#### **5.6.3.2.7.4 CC\_Method**

CC\_Method is a 2 bit code that identifies the Coefficient Coding Method of the current Prediction Filter.

#### **5.6.3.2.7.5 CCM**

CCM is a 3 bit unsigned integer that contains the Coefficient Coding M parameter that is used for Rice decoding the coefficients of the current Prediction Filter. The minimum allowed value for CCM is zero. The maximum allowed value for CCM is 6.

#### **5.6.3.2.7.6 RL\_Bit**

RL\_Bit is used to retrieve the single bits of the run length code, that consists of zeros with a terminating one. The shortest run length code is '1'.

#### **5.6.3.2.7.7 LSBs**

CCM least significant bits of the absolute value of the predicted coefficient are read from the stream directly and are stored in LSBs.

#### **5.6.3.2.7.8 Sign**

Sign is a bit that indicates if the predicted coefficient is positive (Sign='0') or negative (Sign='1').

#### **5.6.3.2.8 Probability\_Tables**

For each Segment in each Audio Channel, the decoder uses a Probability Table (Ptable). In case two or more probability tables are equal, the corresponding probability table entries may be available from the stream only once. The variables used in the syntax of Probability\_Tables are:

- Ptable\_Len[Ptable\_Nr]
- P\_One[Ptable\_Nr][0.. Ptable\_Len[Ptable\_Nr]-1]

With Ptable\_Nr = 0..Nr\_Of\_Ptables-1.

In Probability\_Tables all probability table entries are encoded. Per probability table, the length of the table (= the number of entries) and the entries are encoded. The Ptable entries can be coded using simple linear prediction and Rice coding. The syntax of Probability\_Tables is defined in Figure 5-39.

## Version 2.0

### Figure 5-39 : Syntax of Probability Tables

**Nr\_Of\_Ptables** is the value calculated in Mapping, see chapter 5.6.3.2.5.

**Ptable\_Len[]** is an array that contains the probability table length for each Ptable. Where  $Ptable\_Len[Ptable\_Nr] = Coded\_Ptable\_Len + 1$ , for  $Ptable\_Nr \in \{0..Nr\_Of\_Ptables-1\}$ . The allowed range of Ptable length:  $1 \leq Ptable\_Len[Ptable\_Nr] \leq 64$ .

**P\_one[][]** is a two-dimensional array that finally contains all entries of all probability tables. The first (left) index is the Ptable\_Nr and ranges from 0 through Nr\_Of\_Ptables-1. The second (right) index is the entry number and ranges from 0 through Ptable\_Len[Ptable\_Nr]-1. Each entry of P\_one[][] is in the range of 1 to 128, corresponding to a probability of 1/256 to 128/256 of the next error bit (bit E, See Figure C-1) being a one.

**PCPO** is the Ptable Coding Prediction Order (PCPO). The relation between PC\_Method and PCPO is defined in Figure 5-40.

PC_Method	PCPO
'00'	1
'01'	2
'10'	3
'11'	Not used

**Figure 5-40 : Relation between PC\_Method and PCPO**

The restriction  $PCPO < Ptable\_Len[Ptable\_Nr]$  applies.

**Run\_Length** is a help variable to count the number of zeros in the run length code that is part of the Rice code.

**Delta** is a help variable to calculate the Rice decoded Number.

**PCPC[]** is an array that contains the Ptable Coding Prediction Coefficients (PCPC) that are used for the linear prediction of the Ptable entries. The relation between PC\_Method and PCPC[] is defined in Figure 5-41.

PC_Method	PCPC[0]	PCPC[1]	PCPC[2]
'00'	-1	-	-
'01'	-2	1	-
'10'	-3	3	-1
'11'	Not used	Not used	Not used

**Figure 5-41 : Relation between PC\_Method and PCPC[]**

#### 5.6.3.2.8.1 Coded\_Ptable\_Len

Coded\_Ptable\_Len is a 6 bit unsigned integer that contains the coded probability table length.

#### 5.6.3.2.8.2 Coded\_Ptable

Coded\_Ptable indicates whether the Ptable entries are predicted and Rice coded. Coded\_Ptable is set to zero if the Ptable entries are stored directly. Coded\_Ptable is set to one if the Ptable entries are predicted and Rice coded.

The maximum number of bits permitted for a single Ptable inside Probability\_Tables is:

$$6 + 1 + Ptable\_Len[] * 7$$

where 6 counts the bits for Coded\_Ptable\_Len, 1 counts the Coded\_Ptable bit and the rest the Ptable\_Len[] coded Ptable entries of 7 bit each.

#### 5.6.3.2.8.3 Coded\_P\_one

Coded\_P\_one is a 7 bit unsigned integer that contains the coded value of the next entry of the current Ptable.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 5.6.3.2.8.4 PC\_Method

PC\_Method is a 2 bit field that identifies the Ptable Coding Method of the current Ptable.

### 5.6.3.2.8.5 PCM

PCM is a 3 bit unsigned integer that contains the Ptable Coding M parameter that is used for Rice decoding of the Ptable entries of the current Ptable. The minimum allowed value for PCM is zero. The maximum allowed value for PCM is 4.

### 5.6.3.2.8.6 RL\_Bit

RL\_Bit contains the single bits of the run length code, that consists of zeros with a terminating one. The shortest run length code is '1'.

### 5.6.3.2.8.7 LSBs

PCM least significant bits of the absolute value of the predicted entry are stored in LSBs.

### 5.6.3.2.8.8 Sign

Sign is a bit that indicates if the predicted entry is positive (Sign='0') or negative (Sign='1').

### 5.6.3.2.9 Arithmetic\_Coded\_Data

The syntax of Arithmetic\_Coded\_Data is defined in Figure 5-42.

	# bits	format
Arithmetic_Coded_Data() {		
j=0		
do		
{		
A_Data[j]	1	BsMsbf
j++		
} until end of Audio_Frame		
}		

**Figure 5-42 : Syntax of Arithmetic\_Coded\_Data**

Note that the length of Arithmetic\_Coded\_Data is not encoded.

### 5.6.3.2.9.1 A\_Data

A\_Data[] contains two parts:

- the Arithmetic Code
- Stuffing Bits

The Stuffing Bits are appended at the end of the Arithmetic Code to align the Audio\_Frame to a byte boundary. The number of Stuffing Bits is 0..7. The value of the Stuffing Bits must be zero.

A\_Data[] is used by the function "Input next bit D" as described in Annex C. The minimum length of A\_Data is zero bits. If the length of A\_Data is not equal to zero, A\_Data[0] must have the value zero. The maximum length of Arithmetic Code is the number of bits processed by "Input next bit D". It is allowed that trailing zeros of Arithmetic Code are not encoded in A\_Data[].

## 5.7 Supplementary Data Stream

A Supplementary Data Stream can contain additional information that is multiplexed with the audio information. A Supplementary Data Stream is the concatenation of all Supplementary Data Frames (see chapter 5.2) in an Audio Area. Both the 2-Channel Stereo Area and the Multi Channel Area contain one Supplementary Data Stream each.

### 5.7.1 Supplementary\_Data\_Frame

Every Supplementary\_Data\_Frame has an associated Time Code (see chapter 5.3.1.1.5.1). A Supplementary\_Data\_Frame contains an integer number of Supplementary Data Units (SD\_Unit). The maximum allowed length of a Supplementary\_Data\_Frame is 1500 bytes. The syntax of a Supplementary\_Data\_Frame is defined in Figure 5-43.

	# bytes	format	value
Supplementary_Data_Frame() {			
for (i=1; i<=N; i++)			
{			
SD_Unit()		SD_Unit	
}			
SD_Stuffing	until end of Supplementary Data Frame	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 5-43 : Syntax of Supplementary Data Frame**

N is the number of SD\_Units in a Supplementary\_Data\_Frame.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 5.7.1.1 SD\_Unit

The syntax of an SD\_Unit is defined in Figure 5-44. All SD\_Units in a Supplementary\_Data\_Frame are associated with the Time Code of that Supplementary\_Data\_Frame. The length of an SD\_Unit must be an even number of bytes.

	# bits	format	value
SD_Unit() {			
SD_Type	3	UInt3	
IU_Start	1	IU_Start	
IU_End	1	IU_End	
SD_Length	11	UInt11	0..1498
if (IU_Start == 1)			
{			
Start_PTC	24	Time_Code	
End_PTC	24	Time_Code	
Immediate_Start	1	Immediate_Start	
Immediate_End	1	Immediate_End	
Reserved	22	UInt22	0
if (SD_Type == JPEG_Picture)			
{			
Pic_Sub_Type	8	Pic_Sub_Type	
} else if ((SD_Type == Sub_Picture)    (SD_Type == Text))			
{			
Text_Channel_Mapping	8	Text_Channel_Mapping	
T_Sub_Type	2	UInt2	
Page_Nr	6	UInt6	
P_Ref	2	UInt2	
Nm_Pages	6	UInt6	
}			
SD_Data	8*SD_Length	SD_Data	
SD_Unit_Stuffing	0 or 8	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 5-44 : Syntax of SD\_Unit**

#### 5.7.1.1.1 SD\_Type

SD\_Type defines the global type of the information stored in the SD\_Unit. The definition of SD\_Type is given in Figure 5-45.

SD_Type	Definition
0	Not Allowed
1	JPEG_Picture
2	Sub_Picture
3	Text
4..7	Reserved

**Figure 5-45 : Definition of SD\_Type**

##### 5.7.1.1.1.1 Not Allowed

A value of zero is not allowed for SD\_Type. If the byte at the location of SD\_Type is equal to zero, this location belongs to SD\_Stuffing of a Supplementary\_Data\_Frame.

#### **5.7.1.1.1.2 JPEG\_Picture**

If SD\_Type is equal to JPEG\_Picture, the concatenation of all SD\_Data fields in this Information Unit (see chapter 5.7.1.1.2) must contain one JPEG Picture.

JPEG Pictures in Supplementary Data must use one of the following resolutions: 1440x1080 (hvx) or 1920x1080 (hvx). All JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in one Track must have the same resolution. It is recommended that all JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in one Track Area have the same resolution.

Additional restrictions and definitions for JPEG pictures are defined in chapter 7.

#### **5.7.1.1.1.3 Sub\_Picture**

If SD\_Type is equal to Sub\_Picture, the concatenation of all SD\_Data fields in this Information Unit (see chapter 5.7.1.1.2) must contain one Sub Picture encoded according to the definitions in chapter 8. All JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in one Track must have the same resolution. It is recommended that all JPEG\_Pictures and Sub\_Pictures in one Track Area have the same resolution.

#### **5.7.1.1.1.4 Text**

If SD\_Type is equal to Text, the concatenation of all SD\_Data fields in this Information Unit (see chapter 5.7.1.1.2) must contain one Special\_String (see chapter 1.7.2.6). The Language Code and the Character\_Set\_code that must be used for the Special\_String is defined by Text\_Channel\_Mapping (see chapter 5.7.1.1.8).



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 5.7.1.1.2 Information Unit: IU\_Start, IU\_End

One Information Unit contains all SD\_Data bytes for the information associated with one Start\_PTC / End\_PTC combination. All SD\_Units in one Information Unit must have the same value of SD\_Type and the same value of P\_Sub\_Type or T\_Sub\_Type. IU\_Start must be set to one if the first byte of SD\_Data is the first byte of an Information Unit. IU\_End must be set to one if the last byte of SD\_Data is the last byte of an Information Unit. Information Units with a different value of SD\_Type can be interleaved. Each Information Unit can occupy maximum one SD\_Unit per Supplementary\_Data\_Frame. For the definition of IU\_Start and IU\_End, see Figure 5-46. Figure 5-47 gives an example of the de-interleaving of Information Units.

IU_Start	IU_End	Description
0	0	A continuation SD_Unit, contains SD_Data bytes belonging to one SD_Type. Does not contain the first or the last SD_Data byte of an Information Unit.
1	0	A SD_Unit containing the first SD_Data byte of an Information Unit.
0	1	A SD_Unit containing the last SD_Data byte of an Information Unit.
1	1	A SD_Unit containing both the first and the last SD_Data byte of an Information Unit.

Figure 5-46 : Definition of IU\_Start and IU\_End

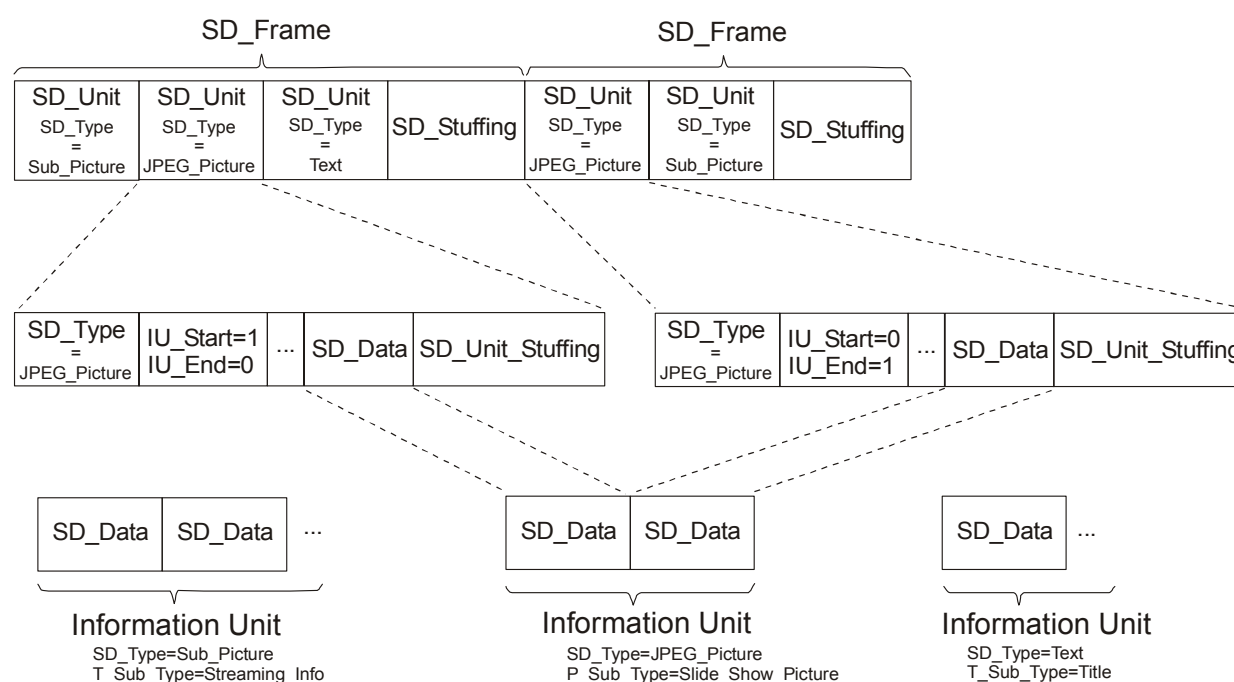


Figure 5-47 : Example of the de-interleaving of Information Units

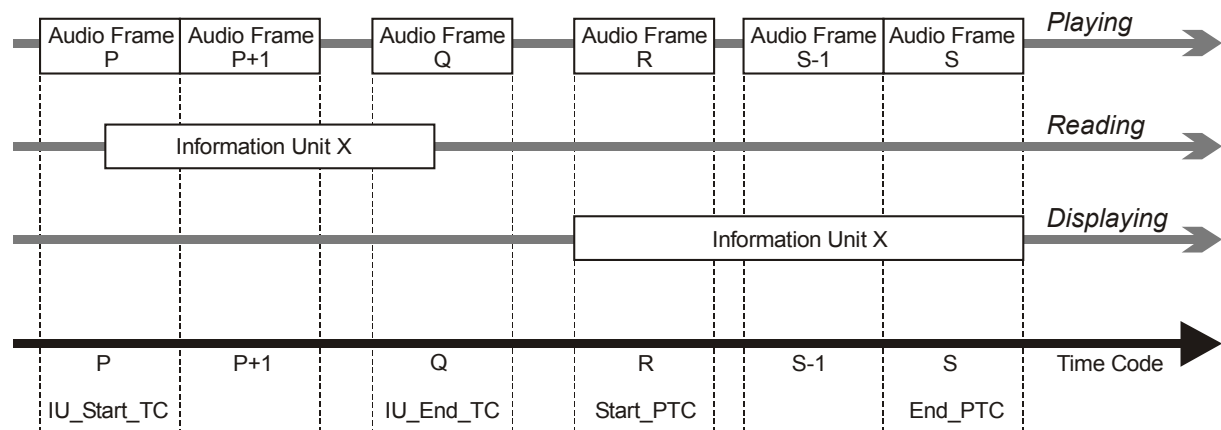
### 5.7.1.1.3 SD\_Length

SD\_Length contains the length of the SD\_Data field in bytes. If IU\_Start is equal to zero, the minimum value of SD\_Length is one. If IU\_Start is equal to one, the minimum value of SD\_Length is zero. If SD\_Length is even, no SD\_Unit\_Stuffing byte must be added following SD\_Data. If SD\_Length is odd, one SD\_Unit\_Stuffing byte must be added following SD\_Data.

#### 5.7.1.1.4 Start\_PTC, End\_PTC, IU\_Start\_TC, IU\_End\_TC

Start\_PTC contains the Time Code from which the data in the Information Unit could be displayed, and before which the data in this Information Unit should not be displayed, also see chapter 5.7.1.1.5. End\_PTC contains the Time Code at which the presentation of data in the Information Unit should be stopped, also see chapter 5.7.1.1.6. The IU\_End\_TC of an Information Unit is equal to the Time Code associated with the SD\_Unit that contains the last byte of that Information Unit.

The IU\_Start\_TC of an Information Unit is equal to the Time Code associated with the SD\_Unit that contains the first byte of that Information Unit. The IU\_Start\_TC should be as close as possible to the Start\_PTC of that Information Unit. Figure 5-48 shows the relation between IU\_Start\_TC, IU\_End\_TC, Start\_PTC and End\_PTC.



**Figure 5-48 : Relation between IU\_Start\_TC, IU\_End\_TC, Start\_PTC and End\_PTC**

#### 5.7.1.1.4.1 PreLoad Area

PreLoad Area[tno] is an area before Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] and is used to store Supplementary Data with contents that should be displayed at or close after Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno]. The start of PreLoad Area[tno] is given in Track\_List\_3, see chapter 3.2.9.2.2. The minimum length of the PreLoad Area is 00:00:00. The maximum length of any PreLoad Area is 00:02:00. The size of the PreLoad Area should be as small as possible. All Supplementary Data information in PreLoad Area[tno] shall have a Start\_PTC in Track[tno]. The layout of the PreLoad Area is presented in Figure 5-49.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 5.7.1.1.4.2 Load Area

The Load Area of a Track consists of the first 5 seconds of a Track. All Pages 1 of the Browsable Text and Browsable Sub-Pictures (see chapter 5.7.1.1.9) with associated JPEG Pictures must be stored in the combined PreLoad Area and Load Area. The layout of the Load Area is presented in Figure 5-49.

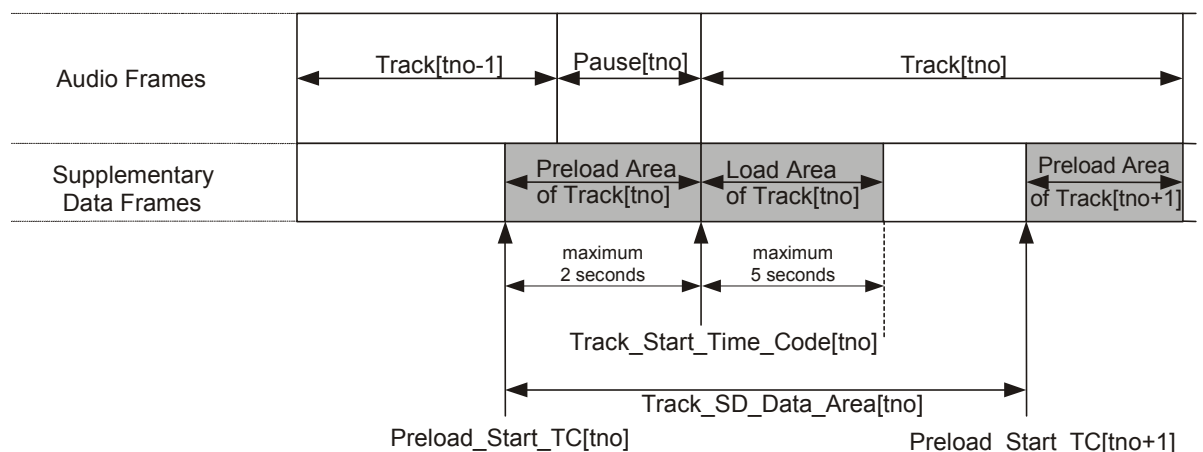


Figure 5-49 : Layout of PreLoad Area and Load Area

#### 5.7.1.1.4.2.1 Track\_SD\_Data\_Area

Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno] can contain Browsable Information and other Supplementary Data information for Track[tno]. The area from PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno] to PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno+1] - 00:00:01 is called the Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno]. If tno is equal to the value of N\_Tracks, Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno] is the area from PreLoad\_Start\_TC[tno] to Total\_Area\_Play\_Time - 00:00:01.

#### 5.7.1.1.4.3 Index\_Load\_Area

The Index\_Load\_Area consists of the first 7 seconds after the Index\_Start\_TC (see chapter 3.2.7.4) of Index 2 or higher in Track[tno]. It is allowed to repeat the Browsable Information (see chapter 5.7.1.1.9) and Background\_Picture\_A/B/C from the combined PreLoad Area[tno] and Load Area[tno] in the Index\_Load\_Areas of Track[tno].

#### 5.7.1.1.5 Immediate\_Start

Immediate\_Start indicates that the Information Unit should be displayed immediately at the Start\_PTC or that a transition effect at the Start\_PTC is allowed. A value of zero for Immediate\_Start means that a transition effect is allowed. If the value of Immediate\_Start is equal to one, the presentation of the information should start instantaneously at the time code given by Start\_PTC.

Only if one of the following conditions is fulfilled it is allowed to set Immediate\_Start to one:

- SD\_Type is equal to JPEG\_Picture and P\_Sub\_Type is equal to Slide\_Show\_Picture
- SD\_Type is equal to Text or Sub\_Picture and T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Streaming\_Info

Note: Transition effects can for example be a fade-in, or, if the End\_PTC of the previous information is close, a cross-over effect.

### 5.7.1.1.6 Immediate\_End

Immediate\_End indicates that display of the Information Unit should stop at the End\_PTC or that a transition effect at the End\_PTC is allowed. A value of zero for Immediate\_End means that a transition effect is allowed. If the value of Immediate\_End is equal to one, the presentation of the information should end instantaneously at the time code given by End\_PTC.

Only if one of the following conditions is fulfilled it is allowed to set Immediate\_End to one:

- SD\_Type is equal to JPEG\_Picture and P\_Sub\_Type is equal to Slide\_Show\_Picture
- SD\_Type is equal to Text or Sub\_Picture and T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Streaming\_Info

Note: Transition effects can for example be a fade-out, or, if the Start\_PTC of the information following is close, a cross-over effect.

### 5.7.1.1.7 Pic\_Sub\_Type

Pic\_Sub\_Type gives additional information on the data in the Information Unit in case SD\_Type is equal to JPEG\_Picture. The format of Pic\_Sub\_Type is given in Figure 5-50.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Reserved						P_Sub_Type	

**Figure 5-50 : Format of Pic\_Sub\_Type**

### 5.7.1.1.7.1 P\_Sub\_Type

The definition of P\_Sub\_Type is given in Figure 5-51.

P_Sub_Type	Definition
0	Slide_Show_Picture
1	Background_Picture_A
2	Background_Picture_B
3	Background_Picture_C

**Figure 5-51 : Definition of P\_Sub\_Type**

### 5.7.1.1.7.2 Slide\_Show\_Picture

If P\_Sub\_Type is equal to Slide\_Show\_Picture, the picture encoded in this Information Unit is part of a series of pictures in a slide show. The Slide\_Show\_Picture is intended to be displayed from Start\_PTC to End\_PTC. One Audio Area can contain maximum 2047 Slide\_Show\_Pictures.

There should not be a gap in the presentation between two successive Slide\_Show\_Pictures if the difference between the End\_PTC of a Slide\_Show\_Picture and the Start\_PTC of the following Slide\_Show\_Picture is equal to one Frame.

For Slide\_Show\_Pictures the following restrictions apply:

- The Start\_PTC must be higher than the End\_PTC of the immediately preceding Slide\_Show\_Picture.
- $Start\_PTC[n+1] > Start\_PTC[n] + 20 \text{ Frames}$ , where n is the sequence number of an Information Unit containing a Slide\_Show\_Picture.
- The highest allowed value for End\_PTC is Total\_Area\_Play\_Time – 00:00:01.
- $Start\_PTC - IU\_Start\_TC \leq 375 \text{ Frames}$
- The amount of bytes in the Information Units containing Slide\_Show Pictures from  $IU\_Start\_TC[n]$  to  $Start\_PTC[n+1]$  must be less than 1125000 bytes.
- $Start\_PTC > IU\_End\_TC + 10 \text{ Frames}$

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

#### 5.7.1.1.7.3 Background\_Picture\_A .. C

If P\_Sub\_Type is equal to Background\_Picture\_A..C, the picture encoded in this Information Unit is intended as background for text information. Per Track maximum one picture labelled as Background\_Picture\_A and one labelled as Background\_Picture\_B and one labelled as Background\_Picture\_C is allowed. Background\_Picture\_A..C are valid from Start\_PTC to End\_PTC. For Background\_Picture\_A..C in Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno] (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.2) the following restrictions apply:

- The Start\_PTC must be equal to the Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).
- If Track[tno+1] exists,  $\text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno]} + \text{Track\_Time\_Length[tno]} - 00:00:01 \leq \text{End\_PTC} \leq \text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno+1]} - 00:00:01$
- If Track[tno+1] does not exist,  $\text{End\_PTC} = \text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno]} + \text{Track\_Time\_Length[tno]} - 00:00:01$
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Background\_Picture\_A plus Background\_Picture\_B plus Background\_Picture\_C must be less than 1500000 bytes for each Track.
- $\text{Start\_PTC} \leq \text{IU\_End\_TC}$  is allowed.

#### 5.7.1.1.8 Text\_Channel\_Mapping

In case SD\_Type is equal to Sub\_Picture or Text, Text\_Channel\_Mapping defines the Text Channels used with the SD\_Data in the Information Unit. The format of Text\_Channel\_Mapping is defined in Figure 5-52.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Ch[8]	Ch[7]	Ch[6]	Ch[5]	Ch[4]	Ch[3]	Ch[2]	Ch[1]

Figure 5-52 : Format of Text\_Channel\_Mapping

Ch[n]=1 means Text Channel n is used. Ch[n]=0 means Text Channel n is not used. Minimally one of Ch[1] to Ch[8] must be set to one.

The character set and language code associated with the Text Channels are defined by Text\_Channels in the Area TOC of the current Audio Area, see chapter 3.2.1.2.15. A value of Ch[n]=1 only is allowed for  $n \leq N\_Text\_Channels$ .

If SD\_Type is equal to Text, all Text Channels with Ch[n] set to one in a single Text\_Channel\_Mapping must use one value of Character\_Set\_Code.

At any Time\_Code it is allowed to have maximum one reference to each Text Channel for each T\_Sub\_Type and Page\_Nr combination. For each Time\_Code, a Text\_Channel may only appear once in the Text\_Channel\_Mapping for each Page and T\_Sub\_Type combination.

#### 5.7.1.1.9 T\_Sub\_Type

The definition of T\_Sub\_Type is given in Figure 5-53.

T_Sub_Type	Definition
0	Streaming_Info
1	Title
2	Lyrics
3	Liner_Notes

Figure 5-53 : Definition of T\_Sub\_Type

Information with T\_Sub\_Type in the range of 1..3 is called Browsable Information.

#### **5.7.1.1.9.1 Streaming\_Info**

If T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Streaming\_Info, the Text or Sub\_Picture encoded in this Information Unit is intended to be displayed as a sequence of Special\_Strings or Sub\_Pictures synchronized with the audio information.

The Start\_PTC of this Information Unit must be higher than the End\_PTC of the previous Information Unit containing Streaming\_Info data.

There should not be a gap in the presentation between two successive Streaming\_Info Sub\_Pictures if the difference between the End\_PTC of a Streaming\_Info Sub\_Picture and the Start\_PTC of the following Streaming\_Info Sub\_Picture is equal to one Frame.

For Streaming\_Info the following restrictions apply:

- The Start\_PTC must be higher than the End\_PTC of the immediately preceding Streaming\_Info with the same SD\_Type and the same Text\_Channel\_Mapping.
- $\text{Start\_PTC}[n+1] > \text{Start\_PTC}[n] + 3 \text{ Frames}$  for Streaming\_Info with the same SD\_Type and the same Text\_Channel\_Mapping, where n is the sequence number of an Information Unit containing Streaming\_Info.
- The highest allowed value for End\_PTC is  $\text{Total\_Area\_Play\_Time} - 00:00:01$ .
- For Sub\_Pictures,  $\text{Start\_PTC} - \text{IU\_Start\_TC} \leq 75 \text{ Frames}$
- For Text,  $\text{Start\_PTC} - \text{IU\_Start\_TC} \leq 30 \text{ Frames}$
- The amount of bytes in the Information Units containing Streaming\_Info Sub\_Pictures from  $\text{IU\_Start\_TC}[n]$  to  $\text{Start\_PTC}[n+1]$  must be less than 225000 bytes for each Text Channel.
- The amount of bytes in the Information Units containing Streaming\_Info Text from  $\text{IU\_Start\_TC}[n]$  to  $\text{Start\_PTC}[n+1]$  must be less than 90000 bytes for each Text Channel.
- $\text{Start\_PTC} > \text{IU\_End\_TC} + 3 \text{ Frames}$ .

#### **5.7.1.1.9.2 Title**

If T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Title, the Text or Sub\_Picture encoded in this Information Unit is intended to be displayed as one page with title information.

For Title in Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno] (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.2) the following restrictions apply:

- The Start\_PTC must be equal to the Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).
- The End\_PTC must be equal to  $\text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code}[tno] + \text{Track\_Time\_Length}[tno] - 00:00:01$ .
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Sub\_Pictures with Title plus Lyrics plus Liner\_Notes must be less than 7000000 bytes for each Track for each Text Channel.
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Text with Title plus Lyrics plus Liner\_Notes must be less than 200000 bytes for each Track for each Text Channel.
- $\text{Start\_PTC} \leq \text{IU\_End\_TC}$  is allowed

#### **5.7.1.1.9.3 Lyrics**

If T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Lyrics, the Text or Sub\_Picture encoded in this Information Unit is intended to be displayed as one page with lyrics text.

For Lyrics in Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno] (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.2) the following restrictions apply:

- The Start\_PTC must be equal to the Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).
- The End\_PTC must be equal to  $\text{Track\_Start\_Time\_Code}[tno] + \text{Track\_Time\_Length}[tno] - 00:00:01$ .
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Sub\_Pictures with Title plus Lyrics plus Liner\_Notes must be less than 7000000 bytes for each Track for each Text Channel.
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Text with Title plus Lyrics plus Liner\_Notes must be less than 200000 bytes for each Track for each Text Channel.
- $\text{Start\_PTC} \leq \text{IU\_End\_TC}$  is allowed

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 5.7.1.1.9.4 Liner\_Notes

If T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Liner\_Notes, the Text or Sub\_Picture encoded in this Information Unit is intended to be displayed as one page with liner notes.

For Liner\_Notes in Track\_SD\_Data\_Area[tno] (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.2) the following restrictions apply:

- The Start\_PTC must be equal to the Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).
- The End\_PTC must be equal to Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] + Track\_Time\_Length[tno] – 00:00:01.
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Sub\_Pictures with Title plus Lyrics plus Liner\_Notes must be less than 7000000 bytes for each Track for each Text Channel.
- The total number of bytes in the Information Units containing Text with Title plus Lyrics plus Liner\_Notes must be less than 200000 bytes for each Track for each Text Channel.
- Start\_PTC <= IU\_End\_TC is allowed

#### 5.7.1.1.10 Page\_Nr

Page\_Nr contains the Page Number of an Information Unit. The Page Number is the sequence number of this Information Unit for the current T\_Sub\_Type in the current Track. The value of Page\_Nr must be in the range of 1..Nm\_Pages.

For each Text\_Channel\_Mapping, SD\_Type, T\_Sub\_Type combination, the following restrictions apply to the order of Page\_Nr on the disc:

- Page\_Nr shall start at one in the beginning of a Track\_SD\_Data\_Area.
- For Browsable Information in a Track\_SD\_Data\_Area, Page\_Nr shall increment by one if Page\_Nr < Nm\_Pages; Page\_Nr only is allowed to restart at one if Page\_Nr = Nm\_Pages.
- The value of Page\_Nr must be equal to Nm\_Pages in the last page of the current Track\_SD\_Data\_Area.

If T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Streaming\_Info or Title, Page\_Nr must be equal to one.

#### 5.7.1.1.11 P\_Ref

P\_Ref contains the P\_Sub\_Type of the background picture that should be used with the Sub\_Picture or Text in this Information Unit. If a P\_Sub\_Type with the value of P\_Ref does not exist in the current Track or in the Preload Area (see chapter 5.7.1.1.4.1) of the current Track, the value of P\_Ref must be ignored and a black background should be used by the player. If SD\_Type is equal to Text, it is allowed for the player to ignore P\_Ref.

#### 5.7.1.1.12 Nm\_Pages

Nm\_Pages contains the total number of pages for each Text\_Channel\_Mapping, SD\_Type, T\_Sub\_Type combination in the current Track\_SD\_Data\_Area. A value of zero is not allowed for Nm\_Pages. If T\_Sub\_Type is equal to Streaming\_Info or Title, Nm\_Pages must be equal to one.

#### 5.7.1.1.13 SD\_Data

SD\_Data contains SD\_Length bytes of information.

#### 5.7.1.1.14 SD\_Unit\_Stuffing

If SD\_Length is not even, eight SD\_Unit\_Stuffing bits shall be added. The content of SD\_Unit\_Stuffing bits must be zero.

#### 5.7.1.2 SD\_Stuffing

The content of SD\_Stuffing bytes must be zero.

## **5.7.2 Supplementary Data player guidelines**

### **5.7.2.1 Player controls**

If a player supports the display of JPEG\_Pictures, minimally the following user selections must be available:

- Display the Slide\_Show\_Picture.

If a player supports the display of Sub\_Pictures or Text, minimally the following user selections must be available:

- Display Streaming\_Info.
- Display Title.
- Display Lyrics.
- Display Liner\_Notes.

### **5.7.2.2 Display of Background pictures**

When the display of either a Sub\_Picture or Text is selected and if a background picture can be displayed, the JPEG picture referred to by P\_Ref should be used as a background for the selected Text or Sub\_Picture.

The last displayed background picture (referenced via P\_Ref) should be displayed until minimally one of the following conditions is fulfilled:

- The End\_PTC of the displayed background picture is reached.
- A new background picture is selected via a new value of P\_Ref.
- The user de-selects the currently displayed Sub\_Picture or Text.



## 6. Extension Area

The presence of the Extension Area is optional. If present, the Extension Area contains the Extension TOC followed by Extension\_Data. The Extension TOC describes the actual browsable picture and text information stored in Extension\_Data.

The first Sector of the Extension TOC is the first Sector of the Extension Area. For the structure of the Extension Area see chapter 2.2.7.

### 6.1 Extension\_TOC

Extension\_TOC describes the pictures and text information stored in the Extension Area. The start location of the Extension\_TOC is given in the Master TOC, see chapter 3.1.1.6. The syntax of the Extension\_TOC is defined in Figure 6-1.

	# bytes	format
Extension_TOC() {		
Extension_TOC_0()	2048	Extension_TOC_0
2CH_Track_ENodes_Info()	a*2048	Track_ENodes_Info (see 6.1.4)
MCH_Track_ENodes_Info()	b*2048	Track_ENodes_Info
Disc_ENode_List()	c*2048	ENode_List (see 6.1.8)
2CH_ENode_List()	d*2048	ENode_List
MCH_ENode_List()	e*2048	ENode_List
}		

**Figure 6-1 : Syntax of Extension\_TOC**

The value of a is equal to 0 or 16. The value of b is equal to 0 or 16. The value of b must be zero if the Multi Channel Area is not present. The value of c is equal to  $\text{roundup}(32 \cdot \text{Disc\_N\_ENodes} / 2048)$ , see chapter 6.1.1.5. The value of d is equal to  $\text{roundup}(32 \cdot 2\text{CH\_N\_ENodes} / 2048)$ , see chapter 6.1.1.7. The value of e is equal to  $\text{roundup}(32 \cdot \text{MCH\_N\_ENodes} / 2048)$ , see chapter 6.1.1.9.

Minimally one of Disc\_ENode\_List, 2CH\_ENode\_List, MCH\_ENode\_List must contain a reference to a ENode which points to a Sub\_Picture, Text and/or a Main\_Picture in Extension\_Data..

**Note:** Additional Lists can be added after MCH\_ENode\_List in future versions of this specification.

### 6.1.1 Extension\_TOC\_0

The syntax of Extension\_TOC\_0 is defined in Figure 6-2.

	# bytes	format	value
Extension_TOC_0() {			
E_TOC_Signature	8	String	"SACDETOC"
Ext_TOC_Length	2	UInt16	
Reserved	4	UInt8	0
Picture_Flags	1	UInt8	
Reserved	1	UInt8	
Text_Channels()	40	Text_Channels	
Reserved	8	UInt8	0
/* disc group */			
Disc_N_ENodes	2	UInt16	
Reserved	6	UInt8	0
Disc_ENode_Info()	128	Disc_ENode_Info	
/* 2ch group */			
2CH_N_ENodes	2	UInt16	
2CH_N_Tracks	1	UInt8	1..255
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
/* mch group */			
MCH_N_ENodes	2	UInt16	
MCH_N_Tracks	1	UInt8	0..255
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
Reserved	16	UInt8	0
Ext_Data_Start_Address	4	UInt32	
Ext_Data_End_Address	4	UInt32	
Reserved	24	UInt8	0
E_List_Pointers()	32	E_List_Pointers	
Reserved	Until 2048	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 6-2 : Syntax of Extension\_TOC\_0**

#### 6.1.1.1 E\_TOC\_Signature

E\_TOC\_Signature is an 8 byte string identifying the Sector with Extension\_TOC\_0. The value of E\_TOC\_Signature must be "SACDETOC" (\$53 \$41 \$43 \$44 \$45 \$54 \$4F \$43).

#### 6.1.1.2 Ext\_TOC\_Length

Ext\_TOC\_Length contains the length in Sectors of Extension\_TOC.

#### 6.1.1.3 Picture\_Flags

The format of Picture\_Flags is defined in Figure 6-3.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
4x3	16x9	Reserved = 0					

**Figure 6-3 : Format of Picture\_Flags**

##### 6.1.1.3.1 4x3 Bit

The 4x3 Bit must be set to one if the Extension Area contains Pictures (see chapter 6.2.4) and/or Thumbnail Pictures (see chapter 6.2.3) with a picture aspect ratio of 4:3. The 4x3 Bit must be set to zero if the Extension Area does not contain Pictures or Thumbnail Pictures with a picture aspect ratio of 4:3.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 6.1.1.3.2 16x9 Bit

The 16x9 Bit must be set to one if the Extension Area contains Pictures (see chapter 6.2.4) and/or Thumbnail Pictures (see chapter 6.2.3) with a picture aspect ratio of 16:9. The 16x9 Bit must be set to zero if the Extension Area does not contain Pictures or Thumbnail Pictures with a picture aspect ratio of 16:9.

### 6.1.1.4 Text\_Channels

Text\_Channels contains the definition of the Text Channels, see chapter 1.7.2.8, as used in the Extension Area. If the Extension Area is present, it is recommended that Text\_Channels is identical in the Extension Area, in the Master TOC (see chapter 3.1.1.4) and in the Area TOC (see chapter 3.2.1.2.15) of both the 2-Channel Stereo Area and the Multi Channel Area.

### 6.1.1.5 Disc\_N\_ENodes

Disc\_N\_ENodes contains the number of ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) structures stored in Disc\_ENode\_List, see chapter 6.1.5.

### 6.1.1.6 Disc\_ENode\_Info

Disc\_ENode\_Info contains the ENode\_Nr of the first ENode structures of an ENode\_Group (see chapters 6.1.8.1.1 to 6.1.8.1.3) that describe the contents of the whole disc. The syntax of Disc\_ENode\_Info is defined in Figure 6-4.

	# bytes	format	value
Disc_ENode_Info() {			
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
Disc_Jacket_ENode_Nr[c]	2	ENode_Nr	
Disc_Liner_Notes_ENode_Nr[c]	2	ENode_Nr	
Discography_ENode_Nr[c]	2	ENode_Nr	
Copyright_Info_ENode_Nr[c]	2	ENode_Nr	
Reserved	8	UInt8	0
}			
Reserved	128-16*N_Text_Channels	UInt8	0
}			

Figure 6-4 : Syntax of Disc\_ENode\_Info

The value of N\_Text\_Channels is equal to the value of N\_Text\_Channels as used in Text\_Channels, see chapters 6.1.1.4 and 1.7.2.8. Each ENode\_Nr in Disc\_ENode\_Info refers to an ENode in Disc\_ENode\_List (see chapter 6.1.5).

#### 6.1.1.6.1 ENode\_Nr

ENode\_Nr contains the Index Number of an ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) in the ENode\_List (see chapter 6.1.8). The Index Number of an ENode is equal to the value of the variable n in Figure 6-7. ENode\_Nr is equal to zero or ENode\_Nr must contain the Index Number of the first ENode of an ENode\_Group, see chapter 6.1.8.1.1. A value of zero for ENode\_Nr means that no ENodes are available for the current field.

#### 6.1.1.6.2 Disc\_Jacket\_ENode\_Nr

Disc\_Jacket\_ENode\_Nr[c] contains the ENode\_Nr of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode\_Group with the jacket information of the disc for Text Channel c. All ENodes in the ENode\_Group referred to by Disc\_Jacket\_ENode\_Nr[c] must have a TC (see chapter 6.1.8.1.4) equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF. A value of zero for Disc\_Jacket\_ENode\_Nr[c] means there is no ENode with jacket information of the disc in Text Channel c.

#### **6.1.1.6.3 Disc\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr**

Disc\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr[c] contains the ENode\_Nr of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode\_Group with the liner notes information of the disc for Text Channel c. All ENodes in the ENode\_Group referred to by Disc\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr[c] must have a TC (see chapter 6.1.8.1.4) equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF. A value of zero for Disc\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr[c] means there is no ENode with liner notes information of the disc in Text Channel c.

#### **6.1.1.6.4 Discography\_ENode\_Nr**

Discography\_ENode\_Nr[c] contains the ENode\_Nr of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode\_Group with the discography information of the disc for Text Channel c. All ENodes in the ENode\_Group referred to by Discography\_ENode\_Nr[c] must have a TC (see chapter 6.1.8.1.4) equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF. A value of zero for Discography\_ENode\_Nr[c] means there is no ENode with discography information of the disc in Text Channel c.

#### **6.1.1.6.5 Copyright\_Info\_ENode\_Nr**

Copyright\_Info\_ENode\_Nr[c] contains the ENode\_Nr of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode\_Group with the copyright information of the disc for Text Channel c. All ENodes in the ENode\_Group referred to by Copyright\_Info\_ENode\_Nr[c] must have a TC (see chapter 6.1.8.1.4) equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF. A value of zero for Copyright\_Info\_ENode\_Nr[c] means there is no ENode with copyright information of the disc in Text Channel c.

#### **6.1.1.7 2CH\_N\_ENodes**

2CH\_N\_ENodes contains the number of ENode structures stored in 2Ch\_ENode\_List, see chapter 6.1.6.

#### **6.1.1.8 2CH\_N\_Tracks**

2CH\_N\_Tracks contains the value of the number of Tracks in the 2-Channel Stereo Area. If Area TOC-B is present in the 2-Channel Stereo Area, the content of 2CH\_N\_Tracks must be equal to the value of N\_Tracks (see chapter 3.2.1.2.11) in Area TOC-B. If Area TOC-B is not present in the 2-Channel Stereo Area, the content of 2CH\_N\_Tracks must be equal to the value of N\_Tracks in Area TOC-A.

#### **6.1.1.9 MCH\_N\_ENodes**

MCH\_N\_ENodes contains the number of ENode structures stored in Mch\_ENode\_List, see chapter 6.1.7.

#### **6.1.1.10 MCH\_N\_Tracks**

MCH\_N\_Tracks contains the value of the number of Tracks in the Multi Channel Area. If Area TOC-B is present in the Multi Channel Area, the content of MCH\_N\_Tracks must be equal to the value of N\_Tracks (see chapter 3.2.1.2.11) in Area TOC-B. If Area TOC-B is not present in the Multi Channel Area, the content of MCH\_N\_Tracks must be equal to the value of N\_Tracks in Area TOC-A. If the Multi Channel Area is not present, the value of MCH\_N\_Tracks must be zero.

#### **6.1.1.11 Ext\_Data\_Start\_Address**

Ext\_Data\_Start\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the first Sector of Extension\_Data. The content of Ext\_Data\_Start\_Address must be equal to the content of E\_Data\_Start\_Address in the Master TOC, see chapter 3.1.1.6.

#### **6.1.1.12 Ext\_Data\_End\_Address**

Ext\_Data\_End\_Address is a 4 byte integer containing the Logical Sector Number (LSN) of the last Sector of Extension\_Data. The content of Ext\_Data\_End\_Address must be equal to the content of E\_Data\_End\_Address in the Master TOC, see chapter 3.1.1.6.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### 6.1.1.13 E\_List\_Pointers

E\_List\_Pointers contains pointers to various lists in the Extension TOC. The value of a pointer gives the Sector offset, from the first Sector of the Extension\_TOC, to the first Sector of a list. If an offset value is set to zero, the corresponding list is not present. The syntax of E\_List\_Pointers is defined in Figure 6-5.

	# bytes	format	value
E_List_Pointers() {			
2CH_Track_ENodes_Info_Ptr	2	Uint16	
MCH_Track_ENodes_Info_Ptr	2	Uint16	
Disc_ENode_List_Ptr	2	Uint16	
2CH_ENode_List_Ptr	2	Uint16	
MCH_ENode_List_Ptr	2	Uint16	
Reserved	22	Uint8	0
}			

Figure 6-5 : Syntax of E\_List\_Pointers

Additional pointers can be defined in future versions of the specification.

#### 6.1.1.13.1 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr

2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the first Sector of 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info. The value 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the Extension\_TOC to the first Sector of 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info. A value of zero for 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr means 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info is not present.

#### 6.1.1.13.2 MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr

MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the first Sector of MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info. The value MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the Extension\_TOC to the first Sector of MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info. A value of zero for MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info\_Ptr means MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info is not present.

#### 6.1.1.13.3 Disc\_ENode\_List\_Ptr

Disc\_ENode\_List\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the first Sector of Disc\_ENode\_List. The value Disc\_ENode\_List\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the Extension\_TOC to the first Sector of Disc\_ENode\_List. A value of zero for Disc\_ENode\_List\_Ptr means Disc\_ENode\_List is not present. If Disc\_N\_ENodes (see chapter 6.1.1.5) is equal to zero, Disc\_ENode\_List\_Ptr must be equal to zero.

#### 6.1.1.13.4 2CH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr

2CH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the first Sector of 2CH\_ENode\_List. The value 2CH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the Extension\_TOC to the first Sector of 2CH\_ENode\_List. A value of zero for 2CH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr means 2CH\_ENode\_List is not present. If 2CH\_N\_ENodes (see chapter 6.1.1.7) is equal to zero, 2CH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr must be equal to zero.

#### 6.1.1.13.5 MCH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr

MCH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr contains a relative pointer to the first Sector of MCH\_ENode\_List. The value MCH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr is the offset in Sectors from the start of the Extension\_TOC to the first Sector of MCH\_ENode\_List. A value of zero for MCH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr means MCH\_ENode\_List is not present. If MCH\_N\_ENodes (see chapter 6.1.1.9) is equal to zero, MCH\_ENode\_List\_Ptr must be equal to zero.

### 6.1.2 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info

2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info contains a Track\_ENodes\_Info structure (see chapter 6.1.4) with the ENode\_Nr of all Track related information for the 2-Channel Stereo Area.

### 6.1.3 MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info

MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info contains a Track\_ENodes\_Info structure (see chapter 6.1.4) with the ENode\_Nr of all Track related information for the Multi Channel Area.

#### 6.1.4 Track\_ENodes\_Info

Track\_ENodes\_Info contains the ENode\_Nr of all first ENode structures of ENode\_Groups that describe the contents of all Tracks in the current Audio Area for all Text Channels. The syntax of Track\_ENodes\_Info is defined in Figure 6-6.

	# bytes	format	value
Track_ENodes_Info() {			
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
for (tno=1; tno<=N_Tracks; tno++)			
{			
Track_Title_ENode_Nr[c][tno]	2	ENode_Nr	
Track_Liner_Notes_ENode_Nr[c][tno]	2	ENode_Nr	
Track_Lyrics_ENode_Nr[c][tno]	2	ENode_Nr	
Track_Slide_Show_ENode_Nr[c][tno]	2	ENode_Nr	
Reserved	8	UInt8	0
}			
Reserved	(256-N_Tracks)*16	UInt8	0
}			
Reserved	(8-N_Text_Channels)*4096	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 6-6 : Syntax of Track\_ENodes\_Info**

The value of N\_Text\_Channels is equal to the value of N\_Text\_Channels in Text\_Channels, see chapters 6.1.1.4 and 1.7.2.8. For the definition of ENode\_Nr see chapter 6.1.1.6.1. For 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info, ENode\_Nr refers to a ENode from the 2CH\_ENode\_List, see chapter 6.1.6. For MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info, ENode\_Nr refers to a ENode from the MCH\_ENode\_List, see chapter 6.1.7. For 2CH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info the value of N\_Tracks is equal to the value of 2CH\_N\_Tracks (see chapter 6.1.1.8). For MCH\_Track\_ENodes\_Info the value of N\_Tracks is equal to the value of MCH\_N\_Tracks (see chapter 6.1.1.10).

##### 6.1.4.1 Track\_Title\_ENode\_Nr

Track\_Title\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] contains the ENode\_Nr (see chapter 6.1.1.6.1) of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode Group with the title information for Track[tno] in the current Audio Area for Text Channel c. A value of 0 for Track\_Title\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] means that Track title information is not available for Track[tno] and Text Channel c.

The ENode referred to by Track\_Title\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] must have the value of TC set to Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2). The ENode referred to by Track\_Title\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] must have the value of Num\_Pages set to one.

##### 6.1.4.2 Track\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr

Track\_Liner\_Notes\_ENodes\_Nr[c][tno] contains the ENode\_Nr (see chapter 6.1.1.6.1) of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode Group with the liner notes information for Track[tno] in the current Audio Area for Text Channel c. A value of 0 for Track\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] means that Track liner notes information is not available for Track[tno] and Text Channel c.

The ENode referred to by Track\_Liner\_Notes\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] must have the value of TC set to Track\_Start\_Time\_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).

##### 6.1.4.3 Track\_Lyrics\_ENode\_Nr

Track\_Lyrics\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] contains the ENode\_Nr (see chapter 6.1.1.6.1) of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode Group with the lyrics information for Track[tno] in the current Audio Area for Text Channel c. A value of 0 for Track\_Lyrics\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] means that Track lyrics information is not available for Track[tno] and Text Channel c.

The ENode referred to by Track\_Lyrics\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] must have the value of TC set to a valid Time Code in Track[tno] or set to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 6.1.4.4 Track\_Slide\_Show\_ENode\_Nr

Track\_Slide\_Show\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] contains the ENode\_Nr (see chapter 6.1.1.6.1) of the first ENode (see chapter 6.1.8.1) of an ENode Group with the slide show information for Track[tno] in the current Audio Area for Text Channel c. A value of 0 for Track\_Slide\_Show\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] means that Track slide show information is not available for Track[tno] and Text Channel c.

The ENode referred to by Track\_Slide\_Show\_ENode\_Nr[c][tno] must have the value of TC set to a valid Time Code in Track[tno]. A value of \$FF:\$FF:\$FF is not allowed.

### 6.1.5 Disc\_ENode\_List

Disc\_ENode\_List contains the ENode\_List (see chapter 6.1.8) for all text and images with disc related information.

### 6.1.6 2CH\_ENode\_List

2CH\_ENode\_List contains the ENode\_List (see chapter 6.1.8) for all text and images with information for the 2-Channel Stereo Area.

### 6.1.7 MCH\_ENode\_List

MCH\_ENode\_List contains the ENode\_List (see chapter 6.1.8) for all text and images with information for the Multi Channel Area.

### 6.1.8 ENode\_List

ENode\_List contains ENode data for the text and images in the Extension Area. ENode\_List has a variable size. The syntax of ENode\_List is defined in Figure 6-7.

	# bytes	format	value
ENode_List() {			
for (n=1; n<=N_ENodes; n++)			
{			
ENode() [n]	32	ENode	
}			
Reserved	until eos	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 6-7 : Syntax of ENode\_List**

With Disc\_ENode\_List, N\_ENodes is equal to the value of Disc\_N\_ENodes (see chapter 6.1.1.5).  
With 2CH\_ENode\_List, N\_ENodes is equal to the value of 2CH\_N\_ENodes (see chapter 6.1.1.7).  
With MCH\_ENode\_List, N\_ENodes is equal to the value of MCH\_N\_ENodes (see chapter 6.1.1.9).

### 6.1.8.1 ENode

ENode defines one image / text combination in the Extension Area. Each ENode has a fixed size of 32 bytes. The syntax of ENode is defined in Figure 6-8.

	# bytes	format	value
ENode() {			
Page_Number	1	UInt8	
Num_Pages	1	UInt8	
TC	3	Time_Code	
Reserved	3	UInt8	0
Text_Ptr	4	UInt32	
Sub_Pic_Ofs	4	UInt32	
Thumb_Pic_Ofs	4	UInt32	
Main_Pic_Ofs	4	UInt32	
Text_Byte_Len	2	UInt16	
Sub_Pic_Len	2	UInt16	
Thumb_Pic_Len	2	UInt16	
Main_Pic_Len	2	UInt16	
}			

**Figure 6-8 : Syntax of ENode**

#### 6.1.8.1.1 ENode Group

One ENode Group consists of Num\_Pages consecutive ENode structures.

#### 6.1.8.1.2 Page\_Number

Page\_Number contains the sequence number of this ENode in an ENode Group. The minimum allowed value of Page\_Number is one. The value of Page\_Number is equal to one in the first ENode of an ENode Group. The value of Page\_Number is equal to Num\_Pages in the last ENode of an ENode Group. The value of Page\_Number must increment by one between two consecutive ENode structures in one ENode Group.

#### 6.1.8.1.3 Num\_Pages

Num\_Pages contains the total number of ENode structures in this ENode Group. A value of zero is not allowed for Num\_Pages.

#### 6.1.8.1.4 TC

TC can contain a Time Code of the Audio that is related with the information pointed to by the ENode. A TC of \$FF:\$FF:\$FF means this ENode does not have a Time Code.

#### 6.1.8.1.5 Text\_Ptr

Text\_Ptr contains the Byte offset from the start of Extension Area to the first Byte of the Text\_Information structure (see chapter 6.2.1.1) referred to by this ENode. If the value of Text\_Ptr is equal to zero, Text is not available for this ENode. Text\_Ptr in different ENode structures can point to the same Text\_Information structure.

#### 6.1.8.1.6 Sub\_Pic\_Ofs

Sub\_Pic\_Ofs contains the Sector offset from the start of Extension Area to the first Sector of the Sub\_Pic\_Information (see chapter 6.2.2.1) referred to by this ENode. If the value of Sub\_Pic\_Ofs is equal to zero, a Sub Picture is not available for this ENode. Sub\_Pic\_Ofs in different ENode structures can point to the same Sub\_Pic\_Information.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 6.1.8.1.7 Thumb\_Pic\_Ofs

Thumb\_Pic\_Ofs contains the Sector offset from the start of Extension Area to the first Sector of the Thumbnail\_Picture (see chapter 6.2.3.1) referred to by this ENode. If the value of Thumb\_Pic\_Ofs is equal to zero, a Thumbnail Picture is not available for this ENode. Thumb\_Pic\_Ofs in different ENode structures can point to the same Thumbnail\_Picture.

### 6.1.8.1.8 Main\_Pic\_Ofs

Main\_Pic\_Ofs contains the Sector offset from the start of Extension Area to the first Sector of the Main\_Picture (see chapter 6.2.4.1) referred to by this ENode. If the value of Main\_Pic\_Ofs is equal to zero, a Picture is not available for this ENode. Main\_Pic\_Ofs in different ENode structures can point to the same Main\_Picture.

### 6.1.8.1.9 Text\_Byte\_Len

Text\_Byte\_Len contains the length in bytes of the Text information referred to by Text\_Ptr.

### 6.1.8.1.10 Sub\_Pic\_Len

Sub\_Pic\_Len contains the length in Sectors of the Sub Picture referred to by Sub\_Pic\_Ofs.

### 6.1.8.1.11 Thumb\_Pic\_Len

Thumb\_Pic\_Len contains the length in Sectors of the Thumbnail Picture referred to by Thumb\_Pic\_Ofs.

### 6.1.8.1.12 Main\_Pic\_Len

Main\_Pic\_Len contains the length in Sectors of the Main Picture referred to by Main\_Pic\_Ofs.

## 6.2 Extension\_Data

Extension\_Data contains all Text, Sub\_Pictures, Thumbnail Pictures and Main Pictures referred to by the Extension\_TOC. The start location and end location of Extension\_Data is given in the Master TOC (see chapter 3.1.1.6) and in the Extension\_TOC (see chapter 6.1). The syntax of Extension\_Data is defined in Figure 6-9.

	# bytes	format	value
Extension_Data() {			
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
Text_Data() [c]	p[c]*2048	Text_Data	
}			
for (c=1; c<=N_Text_Channels; c++)			
{			
Sub_Pic_Data() [c]	q[c]*2048	Sub_Pic_Data	
}			
Thumbnail_Data()	r*2048	Thumbnail_Data	
Main_Picture_Data()	s*2048	Main_Picture_Data	
}			

**Figure 6-9 : Syntax of Extension\_Data**

The value of N\_Text\_Channels is equal to the value of N\_Text\_Channels in Text\_Channels, see chapters 6.1.1.4 and 1.7.2.8. A value of zero is allowed for p[c], q[c], r and s.

### 6.2.1 Text\_Data

Text\_Data[c] contains the text referred to by Text\_Ptr from all ENode structures for Text Channel c. The syntax of Text\_Data[c] is defined in Figure 6-10.

	# bytes	format	value
Text_Data() [c] {			
for (n=0; n<N_Text_Information; n++)			
{			
Text_Information[c] [n]		Special_String	
}			
Reserved	until eos	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 6-10 : Syntax of Text\_Data**

N\_Text\_Information is the number of Special\_Strings in this Text\_Data structure.

#### 6.2.1.1 Text\_Information

Text\_Information[c][n] contains the actual text data pointed to by the Extension\_TOC.

### 6.2.2 Sub\_Pic\_Data

Sub\_Pic\_Data[c] contains the Sub\_Pictures referred to by Sub\_Pic\_Ofs from all ENode structures for Text Channel c. The syntax of Sub\_Pic\_Data[c] is defined in Figure 6-11. Every Sub\_Picture must start at a Sector boundary.

	# bytes	format	value
Sub_Pic_Data() [c] {			
for (n=0; n<N_Sub_Pic_Information; n++)			
{			
Sub_Pic_Information[c] [n]		Sub_Picture	see chapter 8
Reserved	until eos	UInt8	0
}			
}			

**Figure 6-11 : Syntax of Sub\_Pic\_Data**

N\_Sub\_Pic\_Information is the number of Sub\_Pictures in this Sub\_Pic\_Data structure.

#### 6.2.2.1 Sub\_Pic\_Information

Sub\_Pic\_Information[c][n] contains the actual data for one Sub\_Picture formatted according to the definitions in chapter 8.

### 6.2.3 Thumbnail\_Data

Thumbnail\_Data contains the Thumbnail Pictures referred to by Thumb\_Pic\_Ofs from all ENode structures. The syntax of Thumbnail\_Data is defined in Figure 6-12. Every Thumbnail Picture must start at a Sector boundary.

	# bytes	format	value
Thumbnail_Data() {			
for (n=0; n<N_Thumbnails; n++)			
{			
Thumbnail_Picture[n]		Thumbnail_Picture	
TD_Stuffing	until eos	UInt8	0
}			
}			

**Figure 6-12 : Syntax of Thumbnail\_Data**

N\_Thumbnails is the number of Thumbnail Pictures in this Thumbnail\_Data structure.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

### 6.2.3.1 Thumbnail\_Picture

Every Thumbnail Picture must be a JPEG Picture and must use one of the following resolutions: 180x135 (hvx) or 240x135 (hvx). Additional restrictions and definitions for JPEG pictures are defined in chapter 7.

### 6.2.3.2 TD\_Stuffing

All bytes in TD\_Stuffing shall be zero.

### 6.2.4 Main\_Picture\_Data

Main\_Picture\_Data contains the Main Pictures referred to by Main\_Pic\_Ofs from all ENode structures. The syntax of Main\_Picture\_Data is defined in Figure 6-13. Every Main Picture must start at a Sector boundary.

	# bytes	format	value
Main_Picture_Data() {			
for (n=0; n<N_Main_Pictures; n++)			
{			
Main_Picture[n]		Main_Picture	
MP_Stuffing	until eos	UInt8	0
}			
}			

**Figure 6-13 : Syntax of Main\_Picture\_Data**

N\_Main\_Pictures is the number of Main Pictures in this Main\_Picture\_Data structure.

#### 6.2.4.1 Main\_Picture

Every Main Picture must be a JPEG Picture and must use one of the following resolutions: 1440x1080 (hvx) or 1920x1080 (hvx). Additional restrictions and definitions for JPEG pictures are defined in chapter 7.

#### 6.2.4.2 MP\_Stuffing

All bytes in MP\_Stuffing shall be zero.

## **7. JPEG Definitions and Restrictions**

### **7.1 Requirements for JPEG images**

JPEG images shall:

- Use 1:1 pixel aspect ratio
- Be "baseline process" "interchange format" compressed images according to ISO/IEC 10918-1
- Use one or three image components
  - Use YCbCr components in case of three image components
  - Use 4:2:2, 4:2:0 or 4:4:4 subsampling in case of three image components
  - Use Y in case of one image component

The use of the DNL marker segments in JPEG images is not allowed.

### **7.2 Recommendations for JPEG images**

It is recommended to generate the JPEG images according to the default colour parameters of EXIF (primary colours, white point, gamma, R'G'B' to Y'C<sub>b</sub>C<sub>r</sub> conversion, colour signal range).

### **7.3 Notes for Super Audio CD players**

- Super Audio CD players should not gamma correct the RGB components calculated by linear conversion from Y'C<sub>b</sub>C<sub>r</sub> nor the Y'C<sub>b</sub>C<sub>r</sub> signals for output to a display device.
- The R'G'B' to Y'C<sub>b</sub>C<sub>r</sub> transformation in EXIF as well as in SDTV is according to CCIR 601.
- The R'G'B' to Y'C<sub>b</sub>C<sub>r</sub> transformation in HDTV is according to CCIR 709.
- The colour difference signals Y'C<sub>b</sub>C<sub>r</sub> have a different range in EXIF and in both the CCIR 601 and CCIR 709 specifications.
- Super Audio CD players may ignore the content of marker segments that are not related to the JPEG baseline process. In particular, the content of the application marker segments may be ignored.
- It is recommended that Super Audio CD players support the RSTm and DRI marker segments.

## 8. Sub Picture Definitions

The syntax of a Sub\_Picture is defined in Figure 8-1.

	# bytes	format
Sub_Picture()		
{		
Sub_Picture_Header()		Sub_Picture_Header
Color_LUT()		Color_LUT
Encoded_Sub_Picture()		Encoded_Sub_Picture
}		

**Figure 8-1 : Syntax of Sub\_Picture**

### 8.1 Sub\_Picture\_Header

The syntax of Sub\_Picture\_Header is defined in Figure 8-2.

	# bytes	format	value
Sub_Picture_Header()			
{			
Sub_Picture_Signature	2	String	"SP"
Sub_Picture_Flags	1	Sub_Picture_Flags	
Reserved	1	UInt8	0
}			

**Figure 8-2 : Syntax of Sub\_Picture\_Header**

#### 8.1.1 Sub\_Picture\_Signature

Sub\_Picture\_Signature is a 2 byte string identifying the start of a Sub Picture. The value of Sub\_Picture\_Signature must be "SP" (\$53 \$50).

#### 8.1.2 Sub\_Picture\_Flags

The format of Sub\_Picture\_Flags is given in Figure 8-3.

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Sub_Pic_Type				Reserved			

**Figure 8-3 : Format of Sub\_Picture\_Flags**

##### 8.1.2.1 Sub\_Pic\_Type

Sub\_Pic\_Type defines the Resolution, the Encoding Method, the CLUT Type and the Color Space used for the Sub Picture. The definition of Sub\_Pic\_Type is given in Figure 8-4.

Sub_Pic_Type	Resolution(hxv)	Encoding Method	CLUT Type	Color Space
0	1920x1080	A	Color_LUT_00	YCbCr
1	1440x1080	A	Color_LUT_00	YCbCr
2..15	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

**Figure 8-4 : Definition of Sub\_Pic\_Type**

## 8.2 Color\_LUT

Color\_LUT contains the Color Look-Up Table used for this Sub Picture. For this version of the Super Audio CD Specification only Color Look-Up Table type Color\_LUT\_00 is used. Other Color Look-Up Table types can be defined in future versions of the Super Audio CD Specification. The syntax of Color\_LUT\_00 is defined in Figure 8-5.

	# bytes	format
Color_LUT_00()		
{		
for(c1=0; c1<4; c1++)		
{		
YCbCrT() [c1]	4	YCbCrT
}		
}		

**Figure 8-5 : Syntax of Color\_LUT\_00**

### 8.2.1 YCbCrT

The syntax of YCbCrT is defined in Figure 8-6.

	# bytes	format	value
YCbCrT()			
{			
P_Y	1	UInt8	0..255
P_Cb	1	UInt8	0..255
P_Cr	1	UInt8	0..255
Transparency	1	UInt8	0..128
}			

**Figure 8-6 : Syntax of YCbCrT**

#### 8.2.1.1 P\_Y

P\_Y must contain the Luminance signal "Y" as defined in EXIF.

#### 8.2.1.2 P\_Cb

P\_Cb must contain the Colour-difference signal "Cb" as defined in EXIF.

#### 8.2.1.3 P\_Cr

P\_Cr must contain the Colour-difference signal "Cr" as defined in EXIF.

#### 8.2.1.4 Transparency

Transparency defines the Blending ratio between JPEG\_Picture and Sub\_Picture. The Blending is calculated according to the following formula:

$$(\text{Transparency} * \text{JPEG\_Picture} + (128 - \text{Transparency}) * \text{Sub\_Picture}) / 128$$

For the calculation of the Blending the 3 least significant bits of Transparency may be ignored by a player.

### 8.3 Encoded\_Sub\_Picture

Encoded\_Sub\_Picture contains Encoded\_Sub\_Picture\_A, the data for the Sub Picture encoded by Encoding Method A. Other Encoding Methods are reserved for future use. The syntax of Encoded\_Sub\_Picture\_A is defined in Figure 8-7.

	#bits	format
<pre> Encoded_Sub_Picture_A() {     Ver=0     Rep1=0     if (Sub_Pic_Type == 0)     {         Line=1920     }     else     {         Line=1440     }     do     {         Hor=0         Raw=1         do         {             Pixel_Run()         } while (Hor != Line)         for (h=0; h&lt;Line; h++)         {             if (Ver == 0)             {                 S_Pix[Ver][h]=Dif_Pix[h]             }             else             {                 S_Pix[Ver][h]=Dif_Pix[h] ^ S_Pix[Ver-1][h]             }         }         Ver++     } while (Ver != 1080)     Stuffing_Bits         </pre>	<p>0..7</p>	<p>BsMsbf</p>

**Figure 8-7 : Syntax of Encoded\_Sub\_Picture\_A**

**Ver** is the index variable indicating the vertical position of S\_Pix[].

**Rep1** is a help variable to count the repetition of Repeat1.

**Line** holds the horizontal resolution defined by Sub\_Pic\_Type. The value of Line is 1920 or 1440.

**Hor** is the index variable indicating the horizontal position of Dif\_Pix[].

**S\_Pix[][]** is a two-dimensional array that contains cl (see chapter 8.2) of each Sub\_Picture pixel. The first (left) index is the vertical position and ranges from 0 through 1079. The second (right) index is the horizontal position and ranges from 0 through Line-1. The value of S\_Pix[][] is 0 or 1 or 2 or 3. S\_Pix[0][0] is the left-top pixel of Sub\_Picture. S\_Pix[1079][0] is the left-bottom pixel of Sub\_Picture. S\_Pix[0][Line-1] is the right-top pixel of Sub\_Picture. S\_Pix[1079][Line-1] is the right-bottom pixel of Sub\_Picture.

**Dif\_Pix[]** is an array that contains the inter-line Exclusive OR values of cl (see chapter 8.2). The index is the horizontal position and ranges from 0 through Line-1. The value of Dif\_Pix[] is 0 or 1 or 2 or 3.

### 8.3.1 Pixel\_Run

Pixel\_Run defines the variable length codeword and it's interpretation for one run of pixels. The syntax of Pixel\_Run is defined in Figure 8-8.

```

Pixel_Run()                                     #bits format
{
    Code_Head=0
    Code_Head_Len=0
    if (Repl != 0)
    {
        do
        {
            Dif_Pix[Hor]=0
            Hor++
        } while (Hor != Line)
        Repl--
    }
    else
    {
        do
        {
            Code_Bit                                     1    BsMsbf
            Code_Head=(Code_Head<<1) + Code_Bit
            Code_Head_Len++
        } while ((Code_Bit==1) && (Code_Head_Len<8))
        if (Code_Head == 0)
        {
            Trans_Table()
            Dif_Pix[Hor]=Table_Out
            Hor++
            Raw=0
        }
        else if (Code_Head == 2)
        {
            Code_Head2=0
            do
            {
                Code_Bit2                                     1    BsMsbf
                Code_Head2=(Code_Head2<<1) + Code_Bit2
            } while ((Code_Head2!=0) && (Code_Head2!=2) && (Code_Head2!=3))
            if (Code_Head2 == 0)
            {
                do
                {
                    Dif_Pix[Hor]=0
                    Hor++
                } while (Hor != Line)
            }
            else if (Code_Head2 == 2)
            {
                for (i=0; i<128; i++)
                {
                    Dif_Pix[Hor]=0
                    Hor++
                }
                Raw=1
            }
        }
        else
        {
            Repeat2                                     4    UiMsbf
            for (r=0; r<Repeat2; r++)
            {
                for (i=0; i<128; i++)
                {
                    Dif_Pix[Hor]=0
                    Hor++
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

```
        Raw=1
    }
}
else if (Code_Head != 255)
{
    RLength=0
    for (i=0; i<Code_Head_Len-2; i++)
    {
        RLen_Bit
        RLength=(RLength<<1) + RLen_Bit
    }
    RLength += 1<<(Code_Head_Len-2)
    Trans_Table()
    for(l=0; l<RLength; l++)
    {
        Dif_Pix[Hor]=Table_Out
        Hor++
    }
    if ((RLength==127) && (Dif_Pix[Hor-1]!=0))
    {
        Raw=1
    }
    else
    {
        Raw=0
    }
}
else
{
    Repeat1
    Repl=Repeat1
    do
    {
        Dif_Pix[Hor]=0
        Hor++
    } while (Hor != Line)
    Repl--
}
}
```

**Figure 8-8 : Syntax of Pixel\_Run**

**Code\_Head** is a help variable to register the unique header part of the code word. When Code\_Head is equal to '10', Code\_Head2 follows Code\_Head. When Code\_Head is equal to '11111111', Repeat1 (see chapter 8.3.1.6) follows Code\_Head.

**Code\_Head\_Len** is a help variable to count the bit length of Code\_Head.

**Raw** is a help variable to select the calculation method of Table\_Out. If Raw is equal to zero, the pixel value is calculated. If Raw is equal to one, the pixel value is taken from the variable length codeword.

**Table\_Out** is a help variable that contains the value for Dif\_Pix[Hor]. When Raw is equal to zero and Hor is not equal to zero, Table\_Out is calculated in Trans\_Table using Trans\_Table\_Bit1, Trans\_Table\_Bit2 and Dif\_Pix[Hor-1].

**Code\_Head2** is a help variable used when Code\_Head is equal to '10'. Code\_Head2 registers the code word following Code\_Head.

**RLength** is a help variable to register the runlength value part of the code word.

### 8.3.1.1 Code\_Bit

Code\_Bit is used to retrieve the single bits of Code\_Head.

### 8.3.1.2 Trans\_Table

The syntax of Trans\_Table is defined in Figure 8-9.

	#bits	format
Trans_Table() {		
if (Raw==1)		
{		
Raw_Pix_Data	2	UiMsbf
Table_Out=Raw_Pix_Data		
}		
else		
{		
Trans_Table_bit1	1	BsMsbf
if (Trans_Table_bit1 == 0)		
{		
if (Dif_Pix[Hor-1] == 0)		
{		
Table_Out=1		
}		
else		
{		
Table_Out=0		
}		
}		
else		
{		
Trans_Table_bit2	1	BsMsbf
if (Trans_Table_bit2 == 0)		
{		
if ((Dif_Pix[Hor-1]==0)    (Dif_Pix[Hor-1]==1))		
{		
Table_Out=2		
}		
else		
{		
Table_Out=1		
}		
}		
else		
{		
if (Dif_Pix[Hor-1] == 3)		
{		
Table_Out=2		
}		
else		
{		
Table_Out=3		
}		
}		
}		
}		
}		

**Figure 8-9 : Syntax of Trans\_Table**

#### 8.3.1.2.1 Raw\_Pix\_Data

Raw\_Pix\_Data is a 2 bit code that is used for the value of Dif\_Pix[].

#### 8.3.1.2.2 Trans\_Table\_Bit1, Trans\_Table\_Bit2

Trans\_Table\_Bit1 and Trans\_Table\_Bit2 are used to determine the value of Table\_Out by using Dif\_Pix[Hor-1].

#### 8.3.1.3 Code\_Bit2

Code\_Bit2 is used to retrieve the single bits of Code\_Head2.

## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

#### 8.3.1.4 Repeat2

Repeat2 is a 4 bit unsigned integer that contains the repetition time of 128 pixel run of Dif\_Pix[]=0. Repeat2 ranges from 2 through 14. Repeated Runs must not go beyond the end of a pixel line.

#### 8.3.1.5 RLen\_Bit

RLen\_Bit is used to retrieve the single bits of RLength.

#### 8.3.1.6 Repeat1

Repeat1 is a 8 bit unsigned integer that contains the repetition time of "Until End Of Line" run of Dif\_Pix[]=0. Repeat1 ranges from 6 through 255.

#### 8.3.2 Stuffing\_Bits

Stuffing\_Bits are appended at the end of Encoded\_Sub\_Picture\_A until a byte boundary. All bits of Stuffing\_Bits must be zero.

## Annex A: Play Back Requirements (Normative)

This Annex contains requirements for Super Audio CD players.

### A.1 Player Reference Model

The global block diagram of a Super Audio CD Reference Player is given in Figure A-1. This description of the Super Audio CD player reference model consists of:

- Super Audio CD player block diagram
- Description of each block

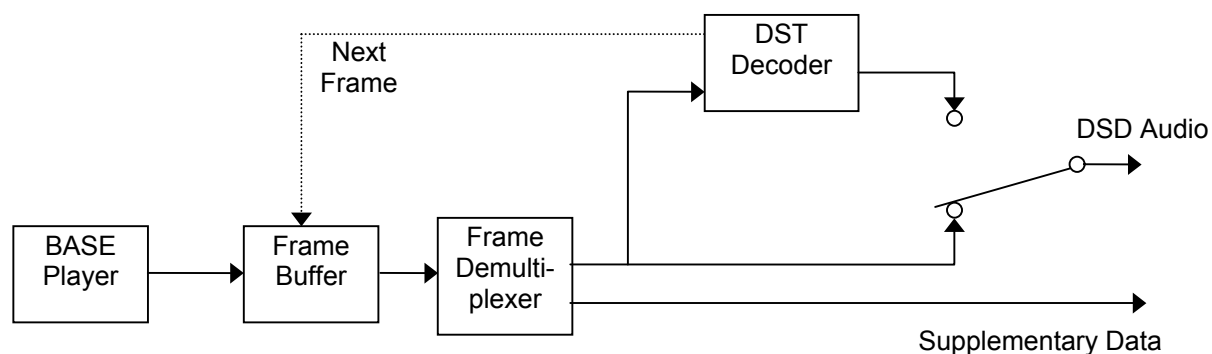


Figure A-1 : Global Block Diagram of the Super Audio CD Reference Player

#### BASE Player:

The BASE Player is responsible for functions like:

- Optical readout
- Servo Systems
- Demodulation
- Error Correction
- Delivering a stream of Sectors with a constant rate.

#### Part 3

Every Super Audio CD player must fulfill the requirements defined in Super Audio CD Part 3.

#### Frame Buffer:

The Frame Buffer accumulates the disc data into Frames, which will be passed to the Frame Demultiplexer at a rate of 75 Frames per second.

#### Frame Demultiplexer:

The Frame Demultiplexer separates the Elementary Frames from a Multiplexed Frame.

#### DST Decoder:

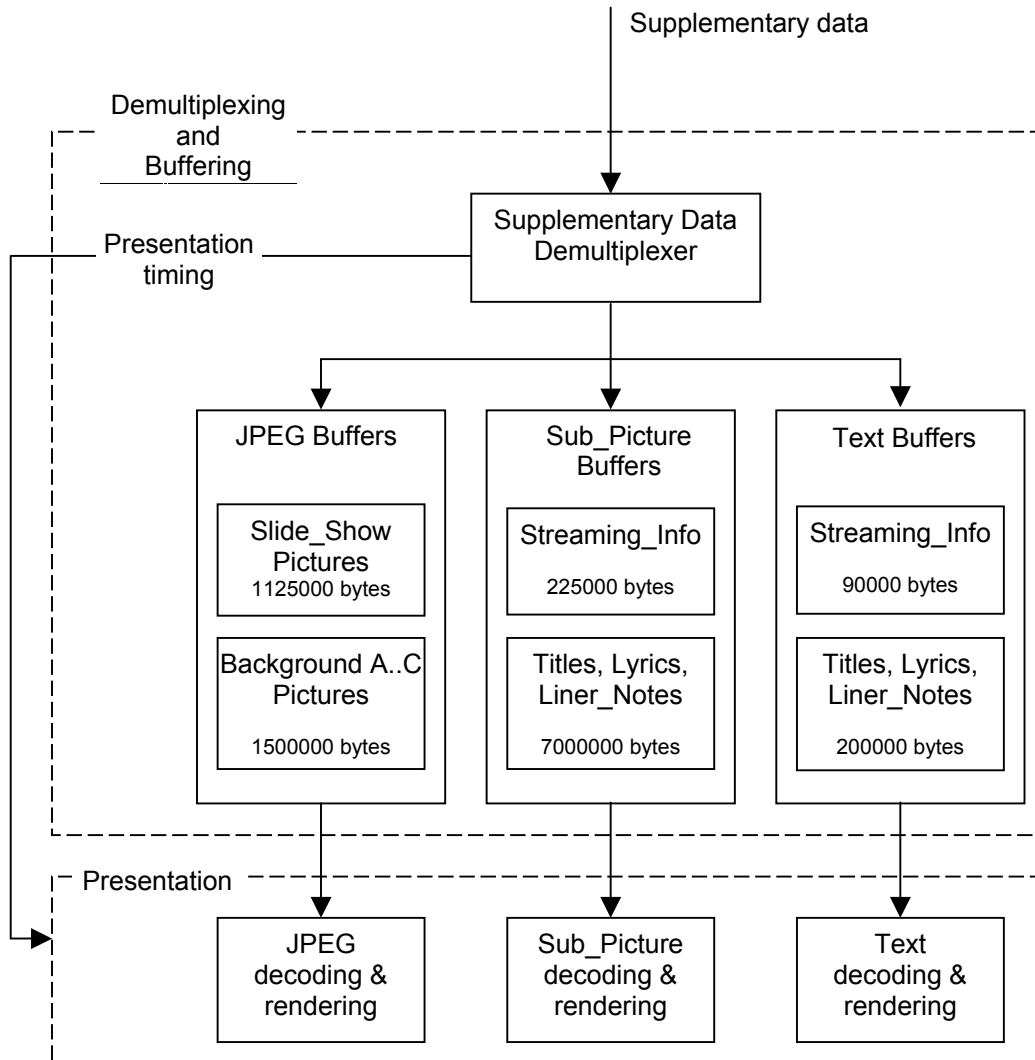
The DST Decoder decodes the DST Coded Audio Frames into a Plain DSD Audio Stream.

#### Fade-in and fade-out times:

It is recommended that both the fade-in and the fade-out times of a Super Audio CD player are less than 50 mS.

## A.2 Supplementary Data Buffer Model

The player model for demultiplexing and buffering Supplementary Data is given in Figure A-2.



**Figure A-2 : Supplementary Data Buffer Model**

## **Annex B: General Genre Table (Normative)**

For the General Genre Table, the values for Genre\_Index are defined in Figure B-1.

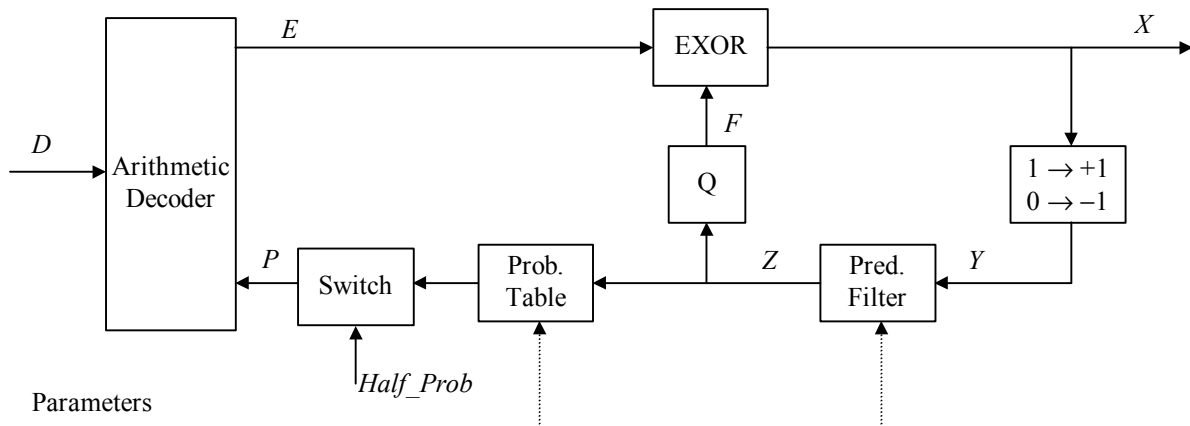
Genre_Index	Definition
0	Reserved
1	Not defined
2	Adult Contemporary
3	Alternative Rock
4	Children's Music
5	Classical
6	Contemporary Christian
7	Country
8	Dance
9	Easy Listening
10	Erotic
11	Folk
12	Gospel
13	Hip Hop
14	Jazz
15	Latin
16	Musical
17	New Age
18	Opera
19	Operetta
20	Pop Music
21	RAP
22	Reggae
23	Rock Music
24	Rhythm & Blues
25	Sound Effects
26	Sound Track
27	Spoken Word
28	World Music
29	Blues
30.. 65535	Reserved

**Figure B-1 : Definition of Genre\_Index**

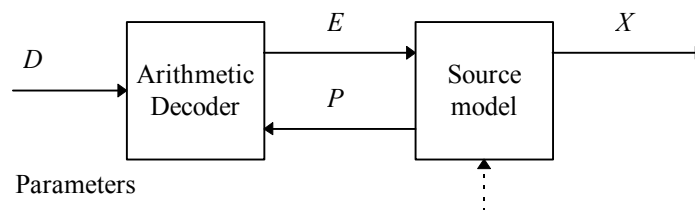
## Annex C: DST Decoder Reference Model (Normative)

### C.1 DST Decoder Block Diagrams

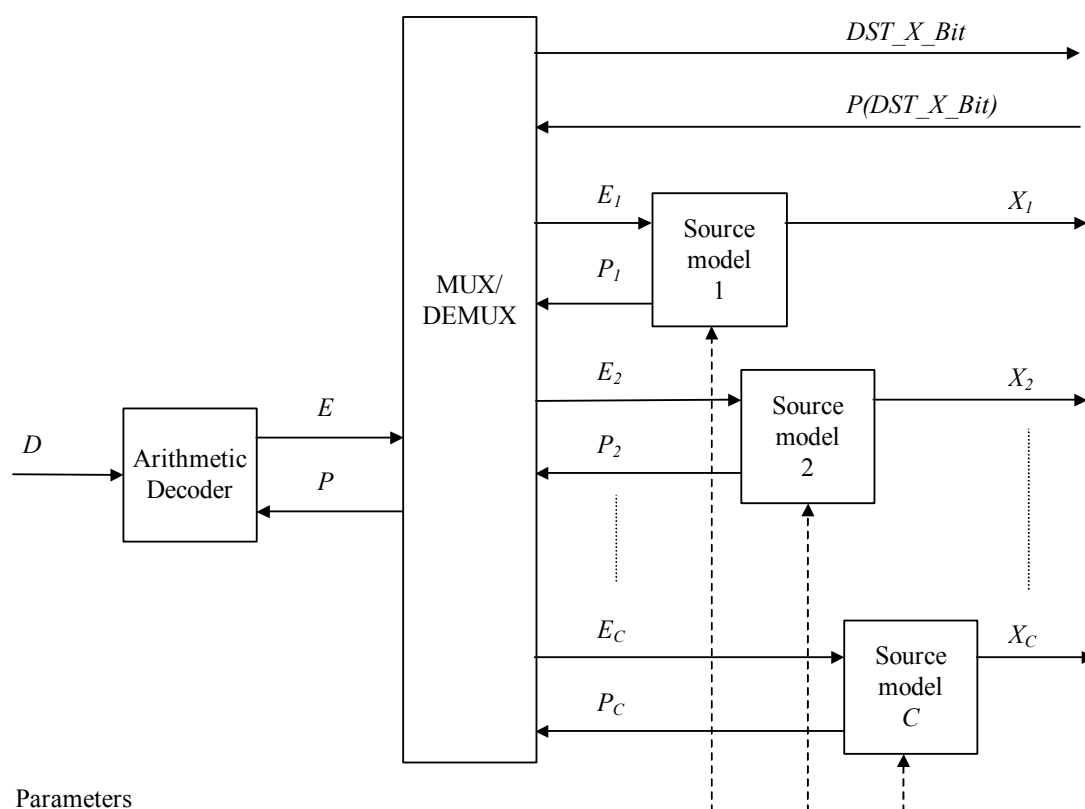
In Figure C-1, the block diagram of a DST Decoder for a mono DSD signal is given. Figure C-2 is a short hand notation for Figure C-1. Figure C-3 shows the diagram that is applicable when C-channels plus the DST\_X\_Bit have to be decoded.



**Figure C-1 : Block diagram of the DST decoder for a mono DSD signal**



**Figure C-2 : Global diagram of the single channel DST decoder**



**Figure C-3 : Global diagram of the C-channel DST decoder**

## C.2 DST Decoding Processes

The parameters processed and extracted from the stream are used to decode the DST coded frame. This chapter explains the decoding processes needed for DST coded frames.

### C.2.1 Introduction

In Figure C-3, three functions are distinguished: the arithmetic decoder, the multiplexer/demultiplexer and a number of source models. The arithmetic decoder receives the sequence of bits ( $D=A\_Data$ ) and the sequence of probabilities ( $P$ ) and generates the sequence of bits ( $E$ ). The  $E$  and  $P$  sequences are assigned to the source models in a cyclic order that is controlled by the multiplexer/demultiplexer. Every source model receives the required parameters like prediction filter coefficients and probability table entries from the stream as specified in syntax and semantics.

Source model  $S$  corresponds with channel  $S$ . The output  $X$  of Source model  $S$  is the DSD signal for channel  $S$ .

### C.2.2 Arithmetic Decoder

Arithmetic coding is a variable length coding technique to compress data near to its entropy. The coded data is represented as a number. The number uses as many digits as are required to uniquely identify the original data. For more information about arithmetic coding see:

- [1] I.H. Witten, R.M. Neal, and J.G. Cleary, "Arithmetic coding for data compression", Communications ACM, vol. 30, pp. 520-540, June 1987.
- [2] P.G. Howard, and J.S. Vitter, "Arithmetic coding for data compression", Proc. IEEE, vol. 82, no. 6, p. 857-65, June 1994.



## Super Audio CD System Description

### Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

---

Figure C-4 defines the variables used in Figure C-5, Figure C-6, Figure C-7 and Figure C-8.

Name	Characteristics	Description
A	12 bit register	This unsigned integer represents the current interval size of the arithmetic decoder.
C	12 bit register	This unsigned integer holds part of the arithmetic code bits.
K	4 bit variable	This unsigned integer is a 4 bit approximation of A.
P	8 bit variable	This unsigned integer is the probability value applied to the arithmetic decoder.
Q	12 bit variable	This unsigned integer is the multiplication of K and P.

**Figure C-4 : Variables used in Figures C-5, C-6, C-7 and C-8**

Figure C-5 shows the overall flow chart of the DST decoding algorithm.

The initialization process is shown in Figure C-6 and is required at the start of decoding each frame. It consists of loading the first 13 bits of the arithmetic code into register C and resetting register A to 4095. The first bit read into C will be overwritten, this is intended because the first bit is always 0. The function "Input next bit D" in Figures C-5, C-6 and C-8 means bit D is taken from A\_Data[], starting with the first bit. After all bits from A\_Data[] have been read, the function "Input next bit D" sets bit D to 0.

The reading of probability information is just retrieving a *P* from the source model (see chapter C.2.3), except for the first bit, where a DST\_X\_Bit probability is read instead.

Figure C-7 illustrates the decoding of one bit of *E* and updating of register A and C. First the current approximated interval size, *K*, is calculated. Then the multiplication of the approximated interval size *K* and the applied probability value *P* is stored in *Q*. If *C* is greater than or equal to *A-Q*, then the arithmetic code lies in the upper part of the interval which means that the original bit encoded, *E*, was a '1' bit; otherwise a '0' bit was transmitted. A and C must be adjusted in the same way as in the encoder.

The renormalizing process is shown in Figure C-8. Renormalizing is required when the value of A is too small. If A is too small, both A and C are shifted one bit left, and a new bit of the arithmetic code, *D*, is read into the least significant bit of C.

It is possible that the last bits of A\_Data[] are not used by the function "Input next bit D" for decoding of the Audio Frame. These unused bits are stuffing bits for alignment of the Audio Frame on a byte boundary.

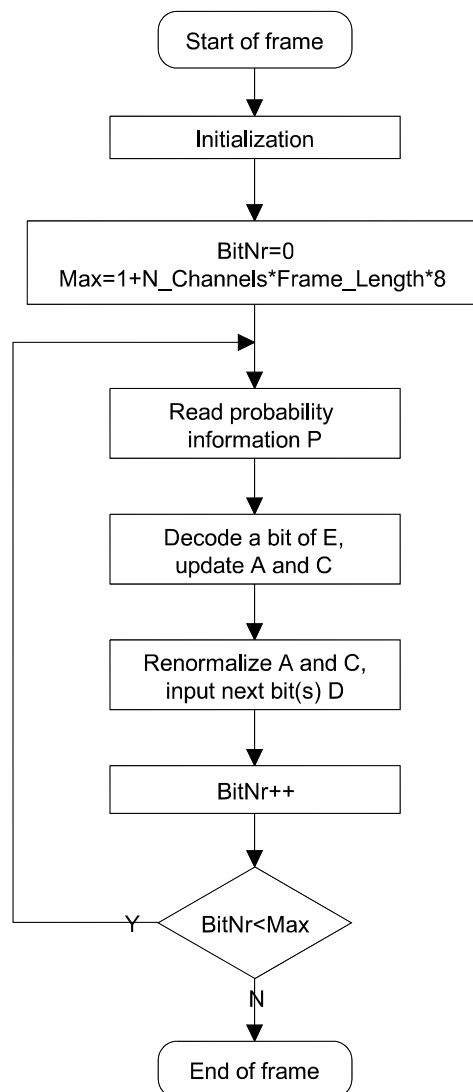
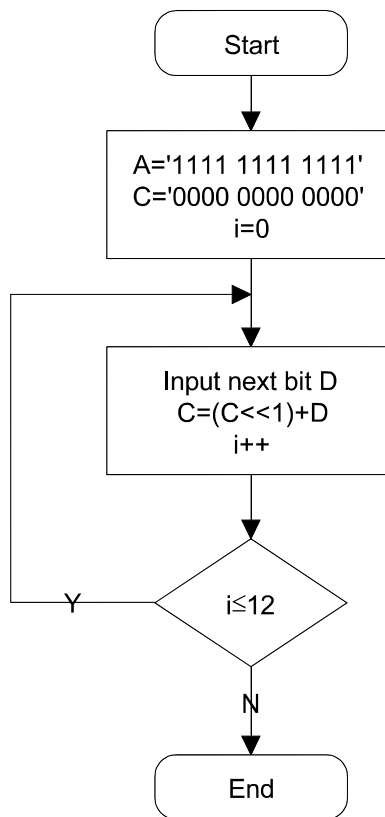


Figure C-5 : Flowchart of the arithmetic decoder

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0



**Figure C-6 : Initialization**

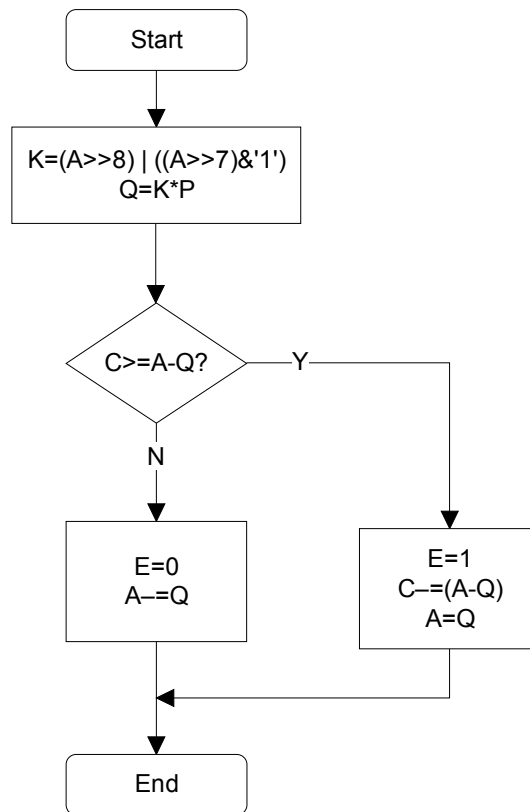


Figure C-7 : Decode a bit of *E*, update *A* and *C*

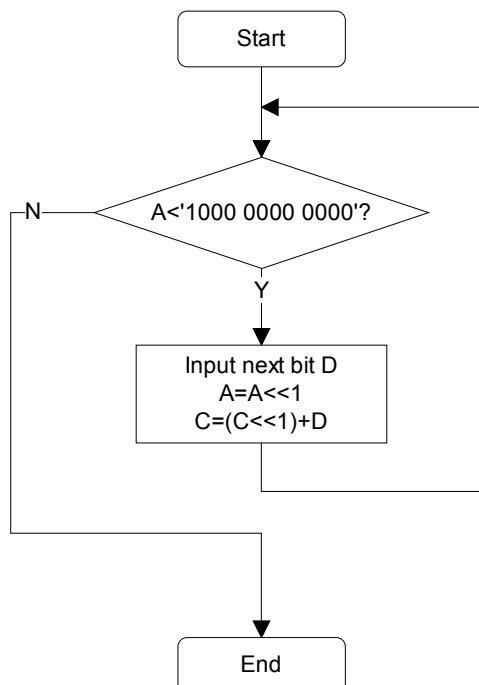


Figure C-8 : Renormalize *A* and *C*, input next bit(s) *D*

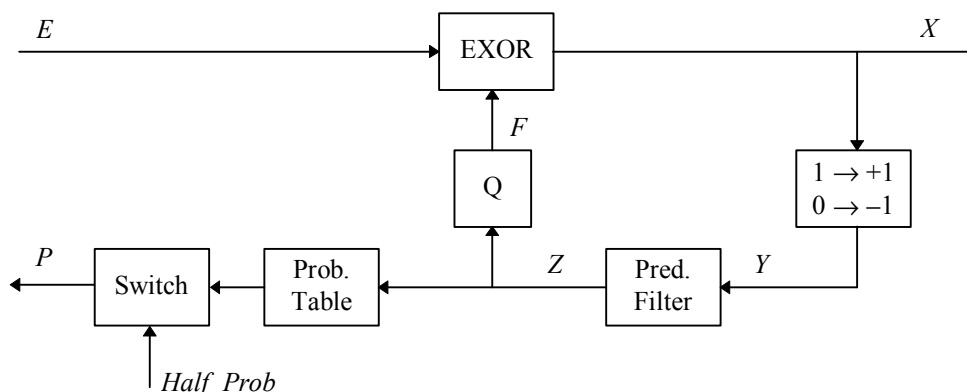
# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

### C.2.3 Source Model

The decoding process in the source model is described for one channel only, as it is equivalent for all channels. Figure C-9 shows the block diagram of the source model.



**Figure C-9 : Source model**

Segmentation and Mapping determine which Prediction Filter and which Ptable must be used to decode the next bit of an Audio Channel. The two functions Filter\_N(n) and Ptable\_N(n) return the Prediction Filter and Ptable number used for decoding bit n of an Audio Channel. The functions Filter\_N(n) and Ptable\_N(n) use Segmentation and Mapping information. Filter\_N(n) is defined as follows:

```

Filters.Start[1] = 0
Filters.Start[Seg+1] = Filters.Start[Seg] + Filters.Segment_Length[Channel_Nr][Seg]
Where: Seg = 1 .. Filters.Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]
      and Seg is the Segment number of Audio Channel Channel_Nr.

```

For bit n, the variable Seg can be determined via:

```

Filters.Start[Seg] <= (n >> 3) < Filters.Start[Seg+1]

```

Filter\_N(n) can be found by using the following formula:

```

Filter_N(n) = Filter[Channel_Nr][Seg]

```

The function Ptable\_N(n) is defined using the same mechanism by:

- Replacing Filters by Ptables
- Replacing Filter\_N by Ptable\_N

Filters.Segment\_Length[ ][ ] and Ptables.Segment\_Length[ ][ ] are defined in chapter 5.6.3.2.4.

Filters.Nr\_Of\_Segments[ ] and Ptables.Nr\_Of\_Segments[ ] are defined in chapter 5.6.3.2.4.

Filter[ ][ ] and Ptable[ ][ ] are defined in chapter 5.6.3.2.5.

Filter\_N(n) and Ptable\_N(n) are used in the following definitions, which are used in the next section:

N	Pred_Order[Filter_N(n)]	Prediction order of the Prediction Filter that the current Segment uses.
H [ ]	Coef [Filter_N(n)] [ ]	Coefficients of the Prediction Filter that the current Segment uses.
L	Ptable_Len[Ptable_N(n)]	Length of the Ptable that the current Segment uses.
T [ ]	P_one [Ptable_N(n)] [ ]	Entries of the Ptable that the current Segment uses.
n	bit sequence number, range: 0 .. 8*Frame_Length - 1	Variable that runs through all bits of the current Audio Channel.

Frame\_Length is defined in chapter 5.6.3.1.

Pred\_Order[ ] and Coef[ ][ ] are defined in chapter 5.6.3.2.7.

Ptable\_Len[ ] and P\_One[ ][ ] are defined in chapter 5.6.3.2.8.

### C.2.3.1 Initialization

The initialization of the prediction filter at the start of each frame is defined as:

$$Y[m] = (-1)^m \text{ for } -N \leq m < 0$$

The output value of the prediction filter is defined as:

$$Z[n] = \sum_{i=0}^{N-1} Y[n-1-i] \cdot H[i]$$

The Q-function transforms Z into F as follows:

$$F[n] = \begin{cases} 1 & : Z[n] \geq 0 \\ 0 & : Z[n] < 0 \end{cases}$$

There are two methods for applying probability values to the arithmetic decoder. In case *Half\_Prob* [*Channel\_Nr*] = '0' the probability value is determined by:

$$P[n] = T[\min(|Z[n]| >> 3, L-1)]$$

In case *Half\_Prob* [*Channel\_Nr*] = '1' the probability value is determined by:

$$P[n] = \begin{cases} 128 & : 0 \leq n < N \\ T[\min(|Z[n]| >> 3, L-1)] & : n \geq N \end{cases}$$

This value of  $P[n]$  is applied to the arithmetic decoder that will return the value of  $E[n]$ . Next the output value  $X[n]$  (DSD sample) is the exclusive OR of  $E[n]$  and  $F[n]$ :

$$X[n] = E[n] \oplus F[n]$$

The logical value of  $X[n]$  is converted to a numerical value of  $Y[n]$  as follows:

$$Y[n] = \begin{cases} +1 & : X[n] = 1 \\ -1 & : X[n] = 0 \end{cases}$$

### **C.2.4 Multiplexing/Demultiplexing**

The multiplexing/demultiplexing device connects each source model to the arithmetic decoder at the correct instant.

Some new variables are introduced for readability of the equations:

$C$        $N\_Channels$ , see chapter 3.2.1.2

$n$       bit sequence number, range:  $0 \dots 8 \cdot Frame\_Length - 1$

For  $1 \leq i \leq C$  we have:

$$DST\_X\_Bit = E[0]$$

$$P[0] = P(DST\_X\_Bit)$$

$$E_i[n] = E[C \cdot n + i]$$

$$P[C \cdot n + i] = P_i[n]$$

For a definition of  $DST\_X\_Bit$  and  $P(DST\_X\_Bit)$ , see chapter 5.6.3.2.2.

## Annex D: Audio Signal Requirements (Normative)

### D.1 Super Audio CD Audio Level measuring condition

Super Audio CD Audio levels must be measured after a 50 kHz Butterworth 30 dB/Oct low pass filter.

### D.2 Super Audio CD Zero dB Audio Reference Level

The Super Audio CD Zero dB Audio Reference Level, referred to as “0 dB Super Audio CD”, corresponds to a sine wave with a peak amplitude equal to 50% of the theoretical maximum DSD signal level.

### D.3 Maximum Super Audio CD Audio Peak Level

The maximum Super Audio CD audio peak level is determined by the maximum allowable DSD Modulation Level (see D.3.1) and by the maximum allowable L-Level (see D.3.2).

#### D.3.1 Maximum DSD Modulation Level

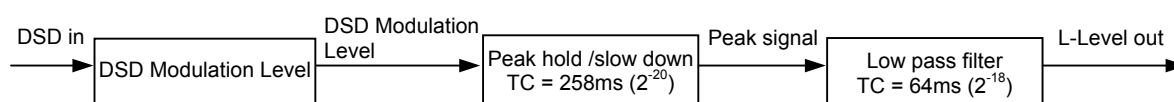
The DSD Modulation Level is equal to  $\frac{|28 - 2N|}{28}$ , where N is the number of bits set to one within any 28 consecutive bits of the DSD stream, and  $4 \leq N \leq 24$ . The maximum allowed value of the DSD Modulation Level is 20/28. A DSD Modulation Level of 20/28 corresponds to the maximum Super Audio CD Audio Peak Level of +3.10 dB Super Audio CD. Peak signal levels above +3.10 dB Super Audio CD are not allowed.

#### D.3.2 Maximum Long term average modulation Level (L-Level)

To calculate the Long term average modulation Level (L-Level), the following algorithm must be used:

- A) Peak-hold with slow-down (time constant 258 ms) the DSD Modulation Level.
- B) Low pass filter the result of A) using a filter with a time constant of 64 ms.

Figure D-1 shows a block diagram to measure the L-Level. The maximum allowed value for L-Level is +1.51 dB Super Audio CD.



**Figure D-1 : Meter for L-Level**

### D.4 High Frequency DSD Signal + Noise Level

The accumulated RMS signal + noise level of the DSD signal, measured after a 40 kHz Butterworth 30 dB/Oct high pass filter and a 100 kHz Butterworth 30dB/Oct low pass filter, is maximally equal to the RMS level of an input sinewave with a peak amplitude of -20 dB Super Audio CD (see D.2).

The averaging filter used to calculate the RMS level must be a first order unity gain IIR filter with a coefficient of  $1/524288 (2^{-19})$ , corresponding to an IIR filter with a cutoff frequency of about 0.85 Hz.



## **Annex E: Audio Signal Recommendations (Informative)**

### **E.1 Analog Output Level**

The recommended analog output level of a 1 kHz 0 dB Super Audio CD sine wave is 2 V RMS  $\pm 1$  dB. For a Super Audio CD player with CD-DA playback capability it is recommended that the analog CD-DA output of a fully modulated signal is equal to the analog Super Audio CD output for a 0 dB Super Audio CD signal.

**Note:** the maximum allowed peak signal level is +3.10 dB Super Audio CD, see D.3.

### **E.2 Analog Post-filter**

To protect analog amplifiers and loudspeakers, it is recommended that a Super Audio CD player contain at its output an analog low pass filter with a cut-off frequency of maximum 50 kHz and a slope of minimum 30 dB/Oct. For use with wide-band audio equipment, filters with a cut-off frequency of over 50 kHz can be used.

### **E.3 DSD DC Offset**

It is recommended that the DC Offset of the DSD signal on the disc is less than -50 dB Super Audio CD.

### **E.4 DSD polarity**

It is recommended that a DSD bit equal to one translates into a rising output voltage at the output of a Super Audio CD player.

## **Annex F: Restrictions to DST coded Audio\_Frames (Normative)**

To allow an optimum DST decoder design, the following restrictions must be imposed on DST coded Audio Frames.

### **F.1 Limited number of erroneously predicted samples**

The maximum allowed number of erroneously predicted samples (see signal E in Annex C) in a DST coded Audio\_Frame is half of the number of DSD samples in a Frame.

$$N\_Errors\_max = \frac{N\_Channels * Frame\_Length * 8}{2} = 18816 * N\_Channels$$

The total number of erroneous predicted samples (N\_Errors) in a Frame is the sum of the number of erroneous predicted samples per Audio Channel:

$$N\_Errors = \sum_{i=1}^{N\_Channels} \left( \sum_{n=0}^{Frame\_Length * 8 - 1} E_i[n] \right)$$

where  $E_i[n]$  is either 0 (good prediction) or 1 (wrong prediction) (see Figure C-7).

For each DST coded Audio Frame the following rule must apply:

$$N\_Errors \leq N\_Errors\_max$$

## F.2 Probability table design requirement

The restrictions defined in this paragraph must be applied to the Ptables.

For each Ptable that is used in a Frame the contents is determined with the following algorithm:

- Take all samples of the frame into account that use the Ptable in question and count for these samples how many times which Ptable entry is used (CA[ ][ ]), and how many times signal E is equal to 1 for this Ptable entry (CW[ ][ ]).

```

for (Ptable_Nr=0; Ptable_Nr<Nr_Of_Ptables; Ptable_Nr++)
{
    for (Entry_Nr=0; Entry_Nr<Ptable_Len[Ptable_Nr]; Entry_Nr++)
    {
        CA[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr] = 0;
        CW[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr] = 0;
    }
}
for (Channel_Nr=1; Channel_Nr<=N_Channels; Channel_Nr++)
{
    if (Half_Prob[Channel_Nr]==0)
    {
        Start = 0;
    }
    else
    {
        Start = Pred_Order[Filter[Channel_Nr][1]];
    }
    Stop = 0;
    for (Seg_Nr=1; Seg_Nr<=Ptables.Nr_Of_Segments[Channel_Nr]; Seg_Nr++)
    {
        Stop += 8*Ptables.Segment_Length[Channel_Nr][Seg_Nr];
        for (Bit_Nr=Start; Bit_Nr<Stop; Bit_Nr++)
        {
            Ptable_Nr = Ptable[Channel_Nr][Seg_Nr];
            Entry_Nr = min(|Z[Channel_Nr][Bit_Nr]|>>3, Ptable_Len[Ptable_Nr]-1);
            CA[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr]++;
            CW[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr] += E_Channel_Nr[Bit_Nr];
        }
        Start = Stop;
    }
}

```

- For each Entry of each Ptable the probability for wrong prediction is derived from these numbers in the following way:

```

for (Ptable_Nr=0; Ptable_Nr<Nr_Of_Ptables; Ptable_Nr++)
{
    for (Entry_Nr=0; Entry_Nr<Ptable_Len[Ptable_Nr]; Entry_Nr++)
    {
        if (CA[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr] == 0)
        {
            P_min[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr] = 1;
        }
        else
        {

$$p = \text{trunc} \left( \frac{512 * CW[Ptable\_Nr][Entry\_Nr] + CA[Ptable\_Nr][Entry\_Nr]}{2 * CA[Ptable\_Nr][Entry\_Nr]} \right);$$

            P_min[Ptable_Nr][Entry_Nr] = min(max(p, 1), 128);
        }
    }
}

```

- $P\_min[ ][ ]$  are the minimum allowed probability values for the entries of the Ptables. For each Entry of each Ptable the probabilities actually used for encoding ( $P\_one[ ][ ]$ ) must meet the following condition:

$$P\_min[Ptable\_Nr][Entry\_Nr] \leq P\_one[Ptable\_Nr][Entry\_Nr] \leq 128$$

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

List of Changes

## List of Changes

### Changes from “Super Audio CD System Description Part 2, Audio Specification, Version 1.3” to “Super Audio CD System Description Part 2, Audio Specification, Version 2.0”

The main changes from Version 1.3 to Version 2.0 are:

- The term “SACD” is changed into “Super Audio CD” throughout the document.
- The 2-Channel Stereo Area is made mandatory on Super Audio CD discs.
- Content provider defined playlists added.
- Bonus Tracks feature added.
- Picture and text features added in Supplementary Data and in the new Extension Area.
- Track\_List\_3 with Copy Control Information and information for pictures and text added.
- Enhanced copy protection system with player authorization.
- The length of the DTCP area changed.
- Revocation data for approved interfaces can be added to the disc.
- Two extended versions of the Area TOC added (Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4). The existing Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2 are compatible with Super Audio CD Version 1.3.
- Relaxation of the rule for a silence pattern at the start and end of a Track in case an audio channel is not available.
- Definition of the DST\_X\_Bit and the DST\_Y\_Bit moved from Super Audio CD Part 3 to Super Audio CD Part 2.
- New audio signal requirement added to Annex D.3.
- Clarifications and editorial changes.

Unless stated otherwise, the chapter and figure numbers in the following list refer to the numbers found in Version 2.0.

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
many	SACD	Super Audio CD	Editorial.
1.2	--	Every Super Audio CD disc must have a 2-Channel Stereo Area with Audio Tracks.	Mandatory 2-Channel Stereo Area.
1.2	Support for scalable supplementary data, synchronous with the audio signal.	Support for text and pictures in supplementary data, multiplexed with the audio signal.	Clarification.
1.2	--	Bonus Tracks.	Bonus Tracks.
1.2	--	JPEG pictures, sub-pictures and coded text for slide shows and for browsable information.	Picture and text features.
1.2	--	Super Audio CD players developed according to this version ... and 1.3.	Clarification.
1.3	--	CCIR 601 ...	Reference added.
1.3	--	CCIR 709 ...	Reference added.
1.3	--	EXIF ...	Reference added.
1.3	--	ISO/IEC 10918-1 ...	Reference added.
1.3	--	JPEG ...	Reference added.
1.3	SACD Part 3 ...	Super Audio CD Part 3-General ...	Reference corrected.
1.3	--	Super Audio CD Part 3-Player ...	Reference added.
1.4	--	CCI ...	Reference added.
1.4	--	Copy Control Information ...	Reference added.
1.4	--	EKB ...	Definition added.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 3-General, Copy Protection Specification

List of Changes

Version 2.0

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
1.4	EOS ...	EOS, eos ...	Editorial.
1.4	--	Sector ...	Definition added.
1.4	Supplementary Data Additional data synchronized with the audio signal.	Supplementary Data Additional data multiplexed with the audio signal.	Clarification.
1.6.1	--	roundup(a) ...	Definition added.
1.6.1	--	$a \wedge b$ Bitwise Exclusive OR of a and b.	Definition added.
1.7.2.4 Fig. 1-7	Major_Version ... 1 Minor_Version ... 30	Major_Version ... 2 Minor_Version ... 0	Version number changed.
1.7.2.4	... Major_Version is equal to 1 and Minor_Version is equal to 30.	... Major_Version is equal to 2 and Minor_Version is equal to 0.	Version number changed.
1.7.2.7	... encoded according to ISO 646 IRV.	... encoded according to ISO 646 IRV. Control Characters are not allowed.	Clarification.
1.7.2.8.3.1	--	Control Characters ...	Chapter added. Clarification.
2.2	The Volume Space of a SACD disc is ... and Extra Data Area.	The Volume Space of a disc according to this version ... Revocation Data Area do not exist.	Areas added due to new features.
2.2 Fig. 2-3	--	EKB1 Area Rev TOC Area Extension Area EKB2 Area Revocation Data Area	Areas added. Enhanced copy protection system. Revocation data for interfaces. Picture and text features.
2.2	Every SACD disc must contain ... gaps must be set to zero.	Every Super Audio CD disc according to ... and must be set to zero.	Areas added due to new features. 2-Channel Stereo Area mandatory now.
2.2.1	In case the File System Area is not big enough, additional file system structures can be stored in the Extra Data Area.	When needed file system structures also can be stored in the Extra Data Area.	Clarification
2.2.3	--	EKB1 Area, EKB2 Area ...	Areas added. Enhanced copy protection system.
2.2.5	--	Rev TOC Area ...	Area added. Revocation data for interfaces.
2.2.6	An Audio Area contains two copies of the Area TOC and one Track Area. The Area TOC contains control information for the Audio Area.	Each Audio Area according to this version ... and Area TOC-4 contain control information for the Audio Area.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6	--	Each Audio Area optionally contains Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

List of Changes

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
2.2.6	Gaps between the Track Area and both Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2 are allowed.	Gaps between the Track Area and both Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 are allowed. Gaps between Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-3 and between Area TOC-4 and Area TOC-2 are allowed.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6	The content of all Sectors in the gaps must be set to zero.	The content of all Sectors in the gaps is Reserved.	Clarification.
2.2.6	If a 2-Channel Stereo Area is not present, the Multi Channel Area must start at LSN 544.	Note that the 2-Channel Stereo Area must be present ... optionally is present on discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification Version 1.3 or lower.	Mandatory 2-Channel Stereo Area.
2.2.6 Fig. 2-6	--	Area TOC-3 Area TOC-4	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.1	Two identical copies of the Area TOC are stored in Area TOC-1 and in Area TOC-2.	The content of Area TOC-1 is equal to ... the same value of Spec_Version.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.1	The start location and length of Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2 is for each Audio Area ...	The start location and length of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 is for each Audio Area ...	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.1	The content of the Area TOC-1 and Area TOC-2 is defined ...	The content of the Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 is defined ...	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.1	... the structure of the Area TOC.	... the structure of Area TOC-1, Area TOC-2, Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.1 Fig. 2-7	--	Track_List_3 Set_of_PlayLists	Figure redrawn. Playlists. Track_List_3.
2.2.6.1	The presence of Track_Text, Index_List, and Track_WebLink_List is optional. ... values of p, q, r and s are given in chapter 3.2.	The presence of Track_Text, Index_List, ... In Area TOC_A values of t and u must be equal to zero.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4. Track_List_3. Playlists.
2.2.6.2	--	Where the term Track Area is used ... for Area TOC-B.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.2 Fig. 2-8	-- -- -- --	Track Area-B ... Track Area-A ... Bonus Tracks Pause[n+1] ... Track[m]	Bonus Tracks. Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
2.2.6.2	For each Track, ... for that Audio Area ...	For Track[1] to Track[N], ... and in Area TOC-B ...	Bonus Tracks.
2.2.6.2	--	For Track[N+1] to Track[M], the start ... playing time of Track Area-B.	Bonus Tracks.
2.2.6.2.6	--	If the 2-Channel Stereo Area contains Bonus Tracks, the 2-Channel Stereo Area must be DST coded DSD.	Rule added. Bonus Tracks.
2.2.7	--	Extension Area ...	Picture and text features.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 3-General, Copy Protection Specification

List of Changes

Version 2.0

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
2.2.8	--	Revocation Data Area ...	Area added. Revocation data for interfaces.
2.2.9	The Extra Data Area can optionally ... needed for the file system(s).	The Extra Data Area can optionally be used to store additional audio related information.	Editorial.
3.1.1 Fig. 3-2	--	Disc_Info_2()	Structure added.
3.1.1.3.6	... length in Sectors of the Area TOC ...	... length in Sectors of Area TOC-A ...	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 added.
3.1.1.3.7	... length in Sectors of the Area TOC ...	... length in Sectors of Area TOC-A ...	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 added.
3.1.1.6	--	Disc_Info_2 ...	Structure added.
3.2	Two copies of the Area TOC are ... the Tracks in the Audio Area.	Two versions of the Area TOC exist ... the Tracks in Track Area-B for Area TOC-B.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4 added.
3.2 Fig. 3-11	--	Track_List_3() ...	Track_List_3 added.
3.2 Fig. 3-11	--	Set_Of_PlayLists() ...	Playlists added.
3.2	The presence of Track_Text, Index_List ... Time Code information and Track attributes.	The fields Track_List_3 and ... is conditionally present on version 2.0 or higher discs.	Track_List_3 added.
3.2.1.1.3	Note: Additional Lists defined in SACD Part 3 are part ...	Note: In case additional Lists are defined in Super Audio CD Part 3, these Lists are part ...	Clarification.
3.2.1.2.1	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial, 2 times.
3.2.1.2.6	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial, 3 times.
3.2.1.2.7	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial, 6 times.
3.2.1.2.9	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.2.9	--	The values of Total_Area_Play_Time in ... in Area TOC-B)	Bonus Tracks.
3.2.1.2.10	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.2.11	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.2.11	--	Note: In Area TOC-A the value of ...	Note added. Bonus Tracks.
3.2.1.2.12	--	First_Bonus_Track_Number ...	Chapter added. Bonus Tracks.
3.2.1.2.15	... Audio Area ...	... Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.2.15		It is recommended that ... Area TOC-B.	Recommendation added. Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
3.2.1.3 Fig. 3-27	--	Track_List_3_Ptr	Track_List_3 added.
3.2.1.3 Fig. 3-27	--	Set_Of_PlayLists_Ptr	List added. Playlists.
3.2.1.3.1	... from the start of the current Area_TOC.	... from the start of the current Area_TOC to the first Sector of Track_Text.	Clarification.
3.2.1.3.2	... from the start of the current Area_TOC.	... from the start of the current Area_TOC to the first Sector of Index_List.	Clarification.



# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

List of Changes

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
3.2.1.3.2	... the Audio Area contains ...	... the Track Area contains ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.3.3	... from the start of the current Area_TOC.	... from the start of the current Area_TOC to the first Sector of Access_List.	Clarification.
3.2.1.3.4	... from the start of the current Area_TOC.	... from the start of the current Area_TOC to the first Sector of Track_WebLink_List.	Clarification.
3.2.1.3.4	... the Audio Area contains ...	... the Track Area contains ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.3.5	--	Track_List_3_Ptr ...	Track_List_3 added.
3.2.1.3.6	--	Set_Of_PlayLists_Ptr ...	List added. Playlists.
3.2.1.4.5	... current Audio Area ...	... current Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.4.6	... current Audio Area ...	... current Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.4.7	... current Audio Area ...	... current Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.1.4.8	... current Audio Area ...	... current Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.2	... current Audio Area.	... current Track Area.	Editorial.
3.2.3	... current Audio Area.	... current Track Area.	Editorial.
3.2.3.2	... Time_Code ...	... Time Code ...	Editorial.
3.2.3.5.2	--	In case an Audio Channel is not available ... same Audio Channel is available for the next Track.	Relaxed silence pattern rule.
3.2.3.5.2	--	Figure 3-35 gives an overview of the allowed combinations of TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4.	Figure added.
3.2.3.5.2 Fig. 3-35	--	Figure 3-35 : Allowed combinations of TMF1, TMF2, TMF3 and TMF4 ...	Clarification. Figure added.
3.2.4.1	... the first Sector with ...	... the first Sector of ...	Editorial.
3.2.5	... DST coded Audio Area.	... DST coded Track Area.	Editorial.
3.2.5.4.1.1	... last Interval in an Audio Area, ...	... last Interval in a Track Area, ...	Editorial.
3.2.5.4.1.3	... of the Audio Area expressed in Frames.	... of the Track Area expressed in Frames.	Editorial.
3.2.5.5.1	Detailed_List[N]()	Detailed_List()[N]	Editorial.
3.2.6	... in the current Audio Area.	... in the current Track Area.	Editorial.
3.2.6.1	... identifying the Sector with ...	... identifying the first Sector of ...	Correction.
3.2.7	... if the Audio Area contains ...	... if the Track Area contains ...	Editorial.
3.2.7.1	... identifying the Sector with ...	... identifying the first Sector of ...	Correction.
3.2.7.4	... start of the Audio Area ...	... start of the Track Area ...	Editorial.
3.2.8	... if the Audio Area contains ...	... if the Track Area contains ...	Editorial.
3.2.8.1	... identifying the sector with Index_List.	... identifying the first Sector of Track_WebLink_List.	Correction.
3.2.8.1	The value of Track_WebLink_Signature must be ...	The value of Track_WebLink_List_Signature must be ...	Correction.
3.2.9	--	Track_List_3 ...	Track_List_3 added.
3.2.10	--	Set_Of_PlayLists ...	Playlists added.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 3-General, Copy Protection Specification

List of Changes

Version 2.0

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
3.3	The length of the DTCP Area is 110 Sectors.	The length of the DTCP Area is 48 Sectors.	Length of DTCP Area changed.
3.3.1	The definition of DTCP_SRM_List is given...	The syntax of DTCP_SRM_List is defined ...	Editorial.
3.3.1 Fig. 3-54	Until 110*2048	Until 48*2048	Length of DTCP Area changed.
3.3.1 Fig. 3-54	Definition of DTCP_SRM_List	Syntax of DTCP_SRM_List	Editorial.
3.4	--	EKB_Data ...	Enhanced copy protection system.
3.5	--	Revocation_TOC ...	Revocation data for approved interfaces added.
4. Fig.4-1	Example of the SACD directory structure ...	Example of the Super Audio CD directory structure ...	New files added.
4.2	The required files in the ROOT directory are ... and SRM0.LST.	The required files in the ROOT directory are ... and REVOC.DAT are not present.	New files added.
4.2.2	The length of the file SRM0.LST must be 110*2048 bytes.	The length of the file SRM0.LST must be 48*2048 bytes.	Length of DTCP Area changed.
4.2.3	--	Files EKB1.DAT and EKB2.DAT ...	New files added.
4.2.4	--	File REVTOC.TOC ...	New file added.
4.2.5	--	File EXTENS.TOC ...	New file added.
4.2.6	--	File EXTENS.DAT ...	New file added.
4.2.7	--	File REVOC.DAT ...	New file added.
4.3.1	... copy of the Area TOC ...	... copy of the Area TOC-A ...	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
4.3.1	... equal to 2048*2CH_TOC_Length ...	... equal to 2048*2CH_TOC_Length bytes ...	Editorial.
4.3.2	--	Files 2C_AREA3.TOC and 2C_AREA4.TOC ...	New files added.
4.3.3	...of the 2-Channel Stereo Area.	... as defined in Area TOC-B, or in Area TOC-A if Area TOC-B does not exist, for the 2-Channel Stereo Area.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
4.3.4	--	The highest value of "nnn" must be equal to ... 2-Channel Stereo Area.	Definition added. Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
4.4.2	--	Files MC_AREA3.TOC and MC_AREA4.TOC ...	New files added.
4.4.3	...of the Multi Channel Area.	... as defined in Area TOC-B, or in Area TOC-A if Area TOC-B does not exist, for the Multi Channel Area.	Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
4.4.4	--	The highest value of "nnn" must be equal to ... Multi Channel Area.	Definition added. Area TOC-3 and Area TOC-4.
5.	--	Note that for the definition of the Audio Data Format the Track Area includes Bonus Tracks if present.	Note added. Bonus Tracks.
5.3.1.3	... Audio Sector ...	... Audio_Sector ...	Editorial.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

List of Changes

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
5.3.1.3	... must be added to the end of that Audio Sector.	... must be added until the end of that Audio Sector.	Editorial
5.3.1.3	--	If an Audio Area contains Bonus Tracks, the following rules apply ...	Rules for Bonus Tracks added.
5.4	--	If the 2-Channel Stereo Area contains Bonus Tracks, the 2-Channel Stereo Area must be DST coded.	Rules for Bonus Tracks added.
5.6.3.2.2	For the definition of DST_X_Bit, see SACD Part 3.	On the disc two patterns are allowed for the DST_X_Bit ...	Definition of the DST_X_Bit moved.
5.6.3.2.2.1	--	P(DST_X_Bit) (Multiplexing/Demultiplexing) ...	Definition of the DST_X_Bit moved.
5.6.3.2.7.1	For the definition of DST_Y_Bit, see SACD Part 3.	The DST_Y_Bit must be set ... shall ignore the content of the DST_Y_Bit.	Definition of the DST_Y_Bit moved.
5.7	...information that is synchronized with the audio ...	... information that is multiplexed with the audio ...	Editorial.
5.7	... concatenation of all Supplementary Data Frames (see chapter 5.2) in a Byte Stream, see Figure 5-5.	... concatenation of all Supplementary Data Frames (see chapter 5.2) in an Audio Area. Both the 2-Channel Stereo Area and the Multi Channel Area contain one Supplementary Data Stream each.	Editorial.
5.7.1 Fig. 5-43	Stuffing ...	SD_Stuffing ...	Name changed. Editorial.
5.7.1	--	N is the number of SD_Units ... of N is 107.	Clarification.
5.7.1.1	SD_Unit ...	SD_Unit ...	Chapter and sub-chapters added. Picture and text features in Supplementary Data added.
5.7.1.2	--	SD_Stuffing ...	Chapter added. Picture and text features in Supplementary Data added.
5.7.2	--	Supplementary Data player guidelines ...	Chapter added. Picture and text features in Supplementary Data added.
6.	--	Extension Area ...	Chapter and sub-chapters added. Extension Area added.
7.	--	JPEG Definitions and Restrictions ...	Chapter and sub-chapters added. Picture definitions.
8.	--	Sub Picture Definitions ...	Chapter and sub-chapters added. Text and pictures.

**Super Audio CD System Description**  
**Part 3-General, Copy Protection Specification**

List of Changes

Version 2.0

Chapter	Version 1.3	Version 2.0	Remarks
Annex A.2	--	Supplementary Data Buffer Model ...	Buffer model added. Picture and text features in Supplementary Data.
Annex C.2.4	For a definition DST_X_Bit and P(DST_X_Bit), see Part 3.	For a definition of DST_X_Bit and P(DST_X_Bit), see chapter 5.6.3.2.2.	Definition of the DST_X_Bit and DST_Y_Bit moved.
Annex D.3	The maximum SACD audio peak level is determined by the maximum allowable DSD modulation level.	The maximum Super Audio CD audio peak level is determined by the maximum allowable DSD Modulation Level (see D.3.1) and by the maximum allowable L-Level (see D.3.2).	Audio signal requirement added.
Annex D.3.1	--	Content of the old Annex D.3	Audio signal requirement added.
Annex D.3.2	--	Maximum Long term average modulation Level (L-Level) ...	Audio signal requirement added.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 2, Audio Specification

Version 2.0

List of Changes

### Changes from “Super Audio CD System Description Part 2, Audio Specification, Tentative Version 1.9” to “Super Audio CD System Description Part 2, Audio Specification, Version 2.0”

The main changes from Tentative Version 1.9 to Version 2.0 are:

- SD\_Slide\_List with the start addresses of all slide show pictures in Supplementary Data added.
- Clarifications and editorial changes.

Unless stated otherwise, the chapter and figure numbers in the following list refer to the numbers found in Version 2.0.

Chapter	Tentative Version 1.9	Version 2.0	Remarks
1.7.2.4 Fig. 1-7	Major_Version ... 1 Minor_Version ... 90	Major_Version ... 2 Minor_Version ... 0	Version number changed.
1.7.2.4	... Major_Version is equal to 1 and Minor_Version is equal to 90.	... Major_Version is equal to 2 and Minor_Version is equal to 0.	Version number changed.
2.2.6.2	--	The total playing time of Track Area-A must minimally be equal to 80% of the total playing time of Track Area-B.	Clarification.
3.1.1.6.13	--	The Revocation Data Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.	Clarification.
3.1.1.6.14	--	The Revocation Data Area is not present in discs according to the Super Audio CD Specification version 1.3 or lower.	Clarification.
3.2.1.2.9	--	The values of Total_Area_Play_Time in ... in Area TOC-B)	Clarification.
3.2.1.2.12	Note: In Area ... to zero.	Notes: In Area ... see chapter 3.2.1.2.9.	Note added. Clarification.
3.2.9 Fig. 3-46	Reserved 16 ... Reserved until 4*4096	SD_Slide_List() 8192 ... Reserved until 4*4096	SD_Slide_List added.
3.2.9.2.3.1	If Slide Show pictures are present ... must be set to zero.	If one or more Slide Show pictures with a ... must be set to zero.	Clarification.
3.2.9.2.4.1	If Streaming_Info SubPictures are present ... must be set to zero.	If one or more Streaming_Info SubPictures for Text_Channel[c] ... must be set to zero.	Clarification.
3.2.9.4	--	SD_Slide_List ...	SD_Slide_List added.
5.7.1.1.2	--	Figure 5-47 gives an example of the de-interleaving of Information Units.	Figure added. Clarification.
5.7.1.1.2 Fig 5-47	--	Figure 5-47 ...	Figure added. Clarification.
5.7.1.1.4	... not be displayed.	... not be displayed, also see chapter 5.7.1.1.5.	Clarification.

# Super Audio CD System Description

## Part 3-General, Copy Protection Specification

List of Changes

Version 2.0

Chapter	Tentative Version 1.9	Version 2.0	Remarks
5.7.1.1.4	... should be stopped, possibly with using a transition effect.	... should be stopped, also see chapter 5.7.1.1.6.	Clarification.
5.7.1.1.4 Fig 5-48	Figure 5-47 ...	Figure 5-48 ...	New figure. Clarification.
5.7.1.1.4.3	... repeat the Browsable Text and Browsable Sub_Pictures from ...	... repeat the Browsable Information (see chapter 5.7.1.1.9) and Background_Picture_A/ B/ C from ...	Clarification.
5.7.1.1.7.2	--	One Audio Area can contain maximum 2047 Slide_Show_Pictures.	Clarification.
5.7.1.1.7.2	... + 20 Frames.	... + 20 Frames, where n is the sequence number of an Information Unit containing a Slide_Show_Picture.	Clarification.
5.7.1.1.8	The use of Text_Channel_Mapping ... combination exists.	For each Time_Code ... T_Sub_Type combination.	Clarification.
5.7.1.1.9.1	Start_PTC[N+1] > ... same Text_Channel_Mapping.	Start_PTC[N+1] > ... containing Streaming_Info.	Clarification.
6.1.1.6.2	--	All ENodes in the Enode_Group ... equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.	Clarification.
6.1.1.6.3	--	All ENodes in the Enode_Group ... equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.	Clarification.
6.1.1.6.4	--	All ENodes in the Enode_Group ... equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.	Clarification.
6.1.1.6.5	--	All ENodes in the Enode_Group ... equal to \$FF:\$FF:\$FF.	Clarification.
6.1.4.1	... the value of TC set to the PreLoad_Start_TC (see chapter 3.2.9.2.2.2) of Track[tno].	... the value of TC set to Track_Start_Time_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).	Clarification.
6.1.4.2	... the value of TC set to the PreLoad_Start_TC (see chapter 3.2.9.2.2.2) of Track[tno].	... the value of TC set to Track_Start_Time_Code[tno] (see chapter 3.2.3.2).	Clarification.
6.1.4.4	... Time Code in Track[tno], a value of \$FF:\$FF:\$FF is not allowed.	... Time Code in Track[tno]. A value of \$FF:\$FF:\$FF is not allowed.	Editorial.